

THE HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY OF EAST AFRICA 1000AD UP TO INDEPENDENCE

History begins with geography and therefore, to understand the history of east Africa, we have to understand its geography.

It should be noted that the development of human beings can be seen as the struggle for freedom from limitations from his surroundings. Therefore, in an effort to control the environment, man engages in different activities that help him survive by bringing the environment under his control.

Before we begin our story, we must say something about the geography of our land. Since our sort of country people live in effects the way they live and develop.

The first thing to note that though the three east African countries cover a large area approximately 1,670,500 sq.km, they have always been sparsely populated. Indeed, there are vast tracts of land where hardly one lives at all and much of the population is contracted in other fairly small areas.

There are three main areas where good soils and adequate reliable rainfall making farming settled.

; from the zaire border, across most of Uganda to Kenyan highlands and much of east-north Tanzania.

; the highlands of south Tanzania between Lake Tanganyika and Malawi covering parts of southern Tanzanian plateau.

; the narrow coastal strip where a humid atmosphere allows crop growing.

In contrast, there are areas in which settled human life is impossible and which are either inhabited or peopled only by the nomads such areas are the arid areas and semi-desert lands stretching from northern Kenya down into central and eastern Tanzania. In west and east Tanzania there are most plateau areas which could provide a good agricultural land but where settlement is hindered by tsetse flies, disease carrying – insect which gives sleeping sickness to human beings and nagana to people.

Because of a varied geographical and climatic conditions in which the peoples of east Africa lived, it was inevitable that they develop at different rates.

In the settled farming communities where land supported the population, people did not have to spend their energies in simply staying alive but could also turn their attention to other pursuits for example improving methods of building and farming and more complex forms of government and conquest. This was particularly true of the north – western region and the coast.

It was therefore true that the more advanced groups tended to absorb or dominate those communities which were less developed.

GEOGRAPHICAL MAP OF EAST AFRICA

DEFINITION OF HISTORY

- It is the study of man's activities from the past generation to the present.
- It's also comparison between what man did and what his doing.
- History also studies how man has developed from pre-colonial days up to the modern days.
- History studies man, his environment and compares them in order to make progress.
- History is the subject that studies man's past mistakes and provides solutions to those mistakes for a better future.

TYPES OF HISTORY

HISTORY IS CLASSIFIED INTO THREE TYPES;

- Political history
- Economic history
- Social history.

POLITICAL HISTORY

- This is the study of how societies have been governed; the leadership styles.

ECONOMIC HISTORY

- This studies how man has been surviving from the past to the present.

- **SOCIAL HISTORY**

- This is the type of history where we learn about how man lived in relation with his society. We look at how man lived, his way of dressing, behavior and belief.

REASONS WHY WE STUDY HISTORY

- To get to know about the events that took place long time ago.
- To discover things that took place in the past.

- History trains our minds to be critical (ask question) in order to talk about the future basing on the past events.
- It helps us to understand and appreciate people of long ago in order to make final judgements.
- It encourages one to look for more information by checking from one source against another.
- To get employment for example being teachers, lawyers, journalists etc.
- It enables us to progeria in reference to the past.
- To pass exams.
- It instills curiosity (desire to know) among learners which prepares them for such work.
- It enables one to plan for the future.
- History imparts good morals to people which prepare them to become responsible and committed citizens.

Sources of history;

- Sources are the various means through which we get to the past.
They include the following.
- Written records
- Archeology
- Carbon 14
- Oral tradition
- Linguistic
- Anthropology

WRITTEN RECORDS

- This is the history in record form.
- It can be informing of newspapers, magazines, dairies, text books etc.
- It is very old in countries like china, japan, Iraq, Egypt etc.
- It is recent in central and east Africa.
- In some countries, kings had people who wrote down important events of their time.
- East and central African had their history written between 50-100 years ago.

- Book which was written in east Africa is called (PERIPLUs erithesea) which was written by agree trader of the roman who was living in Egypt and this was the guide to the commerce of the red sea and the Indian Ocean.

ADVANTAGES OF WRITEN RECORDS

- It cannot easily be forgotten.
- It can be stored for a long period of time.
- Its information is more accurate than other sources since information cannot be changed.
- It can easily be accessed by many people at the same time.
- The materials used for writing are comparatively cheaper than those used in the archeology.
- It can easily be understood by literates.
- Disadvantages of written records
- It does not benefit theilliterates.
- Reading can sometimes be boring.
- You cannot ask what you have not understood.
- It can easily be destroyed by water, fire etc.
- It may be incorrect due to the different attitude people have in different countries in which the event occurred.
- It is expensive to buy certain books.

GUIDING QUESTIONS

Qn.What is written records.

Qn.Give the advantages of written record and the disadvantages.

ARCHAEOLOGY

- Is the dug up history? It's based on material remains /fossils.
- It is obtained by looking at what has been left behind.
- The historian who deals with archeology is referred to as an archeologist.

HOW THE ARCHEOLOGIST WORKS

- He begins by locating the historical sites; this could be where people once lived.
- Then he ex-caveats (digs up) the remains of the people, caves, settlementsand the tombs.
- As he excavates, he looks for items like skeletons, tools, weapons, metals etc.

- The archeologist works with natural scientists who interpret the information.
- They include physicians, botanists, chemists, medical scientists etc.

ADVANTAGES OF ARCHEOLOGY

- It provides information which is not found in the written records.
- The information may be more accurate because it involves analysis of the material remains.
- It creates jobs for people like the archeologists and the scientists.
- It tells us about how man and where he lived.
- It is more reliable than the oral sources since it provides tangible evidence.

DISADVANTAGES OF ARCHEOLOGY

- It is difficult to get some details like languages and beliefs of the people.
- It is time consuming.
- It is expensive because it requires employment of specialists to try and interpret the information.
- The similarities between the cultures might have happened as a result of similar environment of the society hence being inaccurate.
- It is difficult to look for archeological site since the information is not easy to obtain.
- Some objects are perishable; easily destroyed therefore some information is difficult to obtain.

Guiding questions.

- *What is archeology?*
- *Explain how an archeologist works.*
- *What are the advantages and disadvantages of archeologist?*

CARBON 14.

- *Carbon dating is the process in which the amounts of carbondioxide in an object like a skeleton or a piece of wood is measured.*

HOW CARBON 14 IS USED TO MEASURE OR DETERMINE THE AGE OF FOSSILS.

- Carbon 14 is found in carbondioxide in the atmosphere.

- It is absorbed in plants and consequently by living organism/organic matter including animals during their life time.
- When the organism's absorption of carbon dioxide ends and the carbon already absorbed begins to disintegrate at affixed rate.
- Using laboratory equipments, the scientist examines the fossils and calculates the period since the death of the organism.
- The more the carbon in an object, the young the organism is and the lesser the carbon, the older the object.
- In the above sample, one can tell when an animal died, while a piece of wood can show when a tree was cut down.

ADVANTAGES OF CARBON 14

- It is more accurate than other sources of information like linguistic, oral tradition and archeology.
- Carbon methods appear to be the most helpful methods to the historian.
- It provides employment opportunities to the people like the chemists and the physicians.

DISADVANTAGES OF CARBON 14

- Sometimes the calculations may not be accurate due to the various activities that go on into the atmosphere.
- It is expensive since it involves the use of experts like the chemists and physicians.
- It may not reveal certain information like language and beliefs.

Guiding questions

- a) What is carbon dating?*
- b) Explain how carbon dating is used to determine the age of the fossils.*
- c) Give the advantages and the disadvantages of carbon 14.*

ORAL TRADITION.

This is the history passed on by word of mouth from one generation to another.

- It is one of the oldest methods which most of the societies used since they did not have written history.
- The oral sources include myth, legends, stories, songs poems, proverbs, jokes etc.

ADVANTAGES OF ORAL TRADITION

- One is able to get firsthand information because the information is obtained directly from the individual.
- It's convenient in that people find it easier to talk than to write.
- It gives chance to the listeners to ask questions on what is not clear.
- It is cheaper compared to other sources like archeology.
- It benefits both the literates and the illiterates,
- it is more lively since it involves more than one person.

DISADVANTAGES OF ORAL TRADITION

- It is unreliable since information can be exaggerated since people only want to remember the good things.
- Sometimes the teller and the listener face the problem of language barrier.
- In case someone with the firsthand information dies, the information will be lost.
- It's not easy to find someone with the information.
- It may result into hot arguments that may lead to fights.
- Guiding questions.
- What is oral tradition as a source of history.
- Give the advantages and the disadvantages of oral tradition.

LINGUISTIC.

- This is where the vocabulary and the grammar of the language are studied in order to see what it can tell us about the historical experience of the people who speak it.
- This is done by special person called a linguist.

ADVANTAGES OF LINGUISTIC

- One is able to relate people with similar languages.
- One is able to know people's history.
- One is able to know people's origin.
- One is able to tell the difference between people with the same language who were of the same family and how they lost contact with each other.

DISADVANTAGES OF LINGUISTIC.

- It may lead to false information.
- It needs basic skills.
- It is very expensive.
- It involves thorough study of language concerned.

ATHROPOLOGY

- This is the study of existing social organisms, people's cultures, migration and settlement, beliefs and forms of government to find out the relationship between one society and another.
- It is also the study of the beginning and the development of customs and beliefs.
- The people who deal with anthropology are called anthropologists.

ADVANTAGES OF ATHROPOLOGY

- It helps us to know different tribes.
- It helps us to know where people migrated from.
- It helps us to know the relationship between leadership of different organism.
- It helps us to understand people's customs and beliefs.

DISADVANTAGES OF ANTHROPOLY

- It is very expensive.
- It is very tiresome.
- It may lead to false information.
- It takes a long time to learn peoples culture,
- It may not give the all information.
- It involves staying among the people one is studying which is very inconveniencing.
- The similarities between the cultures may have happened as a result of similar environment of the societies studied hence being untrue.

Guiding questions.

- *Write short notes on the following;*
- *Linguistic*
- *Anthropology*
- *Give the advantages and the disadvantages of anthropology.*

CHAPTER 11. THE EARLY EAST AFRICAN COAST (1000-1500 AD)

THE EARLY INHABITANTS OF EAST AFRICA

- There is very little information about the earliest inhabitants of east Africa.
- However, it is believed that the san were the earliest inhabitants of east Africa.
- They were sometimes called the bush men or the hunter gatherers.
- They are said to have occupied the Tanzania and Kenyan highlands.
- Altor, the Bantu and the Cushite's arrived and displaced these early inhabitants.
- Some of the san migrated elsewhere, while others were absorbed completely by the new people.
- Some of the descendants of the san have survived to the present day.
- They include the hadzapi and the Sandawe of Tanzania, the ndorobo of Kenya and the two (batwa of the Congo forest.
- The khoikhoi were also among the earliest inhabitants of east Africa.
- They spoke similar language to the san and they were light-skinned.
- However, they seem to be no survivors of the khoikhoi still living in east Africa.
- Another group of ancestors of modern east Africans were the Cushite's.
- They were fairly tall and light skinned people.
- They were of Caucasoid origin; like the people of Europe, Arabia and westernAsia.
- The origin of the Cushite's has been traced to the Ethiopian highland.
- They occupied the northern part of the coast and were cattle keepers.
- Like the Bushmen, the Cushitic people were absorbed or displaced by the later groups like the Bantu.
- Survivors of the Cushite's in east Africa include the Galla, boran and Somali of Kenya, theiraqw, dahalo and mbungu of Tanzania and hima of Uganda.
- Other peoples also migrated into east Africa and they were the Bantu and the Nilotic peoples.
- Later, theArabs and the Persians came from the 7th century and took over the east African coast.

ORGANISATION OF THE EAST AFRICAN COAST BEFORE THE COMING OF THE ARABS

(WAY OF LIFE OF THE EARLY INHABITANTS BY 1000 AD)

- By 1000 ad, the east African coast was inhabited by three primitive societies.
- This includes the bush men, the Cushite's and the Bantu.
- Each of these societies had an independent social, political and economic organization.

THE SAN

- The san (bushmen) belong to the bushmanoid family.
- They were short, strongly beauty and yellow-brown skinned.
- They spoke a language of croaks and clicks.
- They lived in the caves or temporally shelters made with branches and leaves.
- The san lived in small communities of 20 and 100 people.
- They had simple system of administration with no chiefs.
- However, the elders in the community were responsible for the day-to-day administration of the society.
- Economically, work was divided according to sex were men carried out fishing and hunting while women were gathering food.
- Many used simple weapons like poisoned arrows for hunting small animals and dug pits to trap large animals.
- The women gathered roots, wild berries, seeds, nuts caterpillars and termites.
- The san also made stone tools like hand axes which were used to dig pits –traps and cut the skin animals.
- They kept the dog of company and protection when hunting.
- They were great artists and left behind painting in the caves they occupied.

THE KHOIKHOI

- The khoikhoi were also among the earliest inhabitants of east Africa.
- They spoke similar language to the san, were light-skinned and slightly taller than the san.
- They lived in larger communities of between 500-2000 people.
- They had chiefs to administer their societies.
- The khoikhoi built huts to live in unlike the san.

- They were nomadic pastoralists who kept on moving from one place to another looking for water and pasture.
- They also carried out hunting and fishing to supplement on their diet.

THE CUSHITES

- The Cushites had no centralized system of administration and were instead ruled by clan leaders.
- The Cushite's were fairly tall, light-skinned people.
- They were predominantly nomadic pastoralists who moved from one place to another looking for water and pasture.
- They carried out agriculture growing mainly bananas and millet.
- They carried out fishing to supplement on their diet.
- They hunted wild animals as a way of getting food.
- They traded in food stuffs and iron tools like Joes with their neighbors.
- They lived in small grass thatched houses.

THE BANTU

- The Bantu was ruled by chiefs and had a bigger political organization than other groups.
- They also had small armies armed with axes and spears for defense purposes.
- Economically, the Bantu carried out agriculture growing many bananas and millet.
- They also carried out fishing especially those who lived near rivers.
- They also hunted wild animals as a way of getting food.
- They traded in food stuffs and iron tools like hoes with their neighbors.
- They carried out iron working and made tools like pangs, axes and weapons like spear, bows etc. out of iron.
- They carried out mining especially gold which they exchanged with their neighbors.
- Socially, the Bantu stayed in settled communities.
- They lived in small wattle houses that were grass thatched.
- They practiced ancestral worship since they believed in small gods.
- They also believed in life after death.

Qn. Describe the way of life at the coast before the coming of the Arabs.

THE LAND OF ZENJI/AZANIA

- The land of zenji refers to the stretch of land between Mogadishu and cape Delgado.
- It was approximately 3000 km long and each stretched 10 miles into the interior of eastAfrica.
- Later, this land came to be known as the zenji empire.
- The name was given to thecoastal settlements by the early Arabs and Persians.
- It was used to mean the land of the black people.
- It was also called Azania by the Greeks
- Modern historians however refer to it as zinjanthropole.
- The land was grouped into three clusters of settlement.
- Benadir (north Mogadishu) comprising of Mogadishu, Grava, Gecca, Kismayu.
- Malindi coast was made of Gedi, Kilifi and takangu.
- The south coast comprised of kilwa and sofala.
- These towns and settlements totaled up to 37 in number.
- Today, the name –zenji survives in the name Zanzibar.
- It original inhabitants were bushmen followed by the bantu and the Cushite's.
- Later, the Arabs, the Persians, Indonesians, Egyptians and the Indians came to the coast.
- But it was a misleading interpretation of the east African coast because such an empire never existed on the east African coast.

Qn.what was the land of zenji.

WHY IT IS INCORRECT TO REFER TO THE COAST AS AN EMPIRE

- The term zenji empire was misleading because an empire never existed at the east African coast.
- The coast was never under a single authority since each of the coastal settlements had an independent ruler.

- These towns were ever fighting for control over trade for example Mombasa versus Malindi and sofa versus kilwa.
- These conflicts were clear testimony that these states were not a single authority but independent.
- Powerful states like kilwa nominated the weak ones like Pemba, sofa and Zanzibar.
- By 1000 AD the coast comprised of many races like the Africans, Persians, Greeks, Indians, Indonesians and the Arabs etc.
- Therefore, the zenji empire was more of a myth than a reality.
- It was the Portuguese's who attempted to establish an empire on the coast much as they as failed.

Qn. Why is it incorrect to refer to the coast as the land of zenji.

EXTENT OF THE ZENJI EMPIRE MAP

ARAB INTEREST AT THE EAST AFRICAN COAST

- The Arabs and the Persians were the first foreigners to settle at the east African coast.
- They came from the Arabian Peninsula in the modern states of Saudi Arabia, Persia, Iraq, Syria, and Turkey.
- Some of the Arabs came as traders while others came as political and religious refugees.
- By the 17th century, they had started arriving and by 1000 AD, they had permanently settled at the east African coast.

REASONS FOR THE COMING OF THE ARABS

- They had the desire to control the profitable trade that was taking place at the east African coast.
- The availability of trade items like gold, ivory, copper etc. might have attracted them.
- The strategic location of the east African coast favored trade between the Arabs and the coastal people.

- They were encouraged by the presence of the monsoon wind which facilitated the movement of Arabs from Arabia to the coast.
- The fertile soils at the coast suitable for growing crops might have attracted their Arabs.
- They had the desire of spreading Islamic religion to the coastal people.
- The good natural harbors at the coast which could accommodate large ships might have attracted some Arab traders.
- Some were running away from religious persecution in Saudi-Arabia hence need for peaceful areas.
- The favorable climate at the coast suitable for both agriculture and human settlement might have attracted them.
- The hospitality given to them by the coastal people like the Bantu and Cushite's might have attracted them.
- The presence of fresh waters at the coast suitable for both domestic and industrial use might have attracted them.
- Political persecution in Arabia and Persia might have forced some of them to look for peaceful areas.
- Some Arabs had the desire to gain political control of the coast hence settling at the east African coast.
- The cultural ties that had been developed the Arabs and the coastal Bantu due to intermarriages made them to settle.
- Love for adventure especially by the youth might have forced them to discover what was taking place in the other parts of the world.
- Presence of trade items like gold, ivory etc. might have attracted them since they were traders.
- Influence of the first Arabs who gave good reports about the east African coast might have attracted the Arabs.
- **Qn. Why did the Arabs and the Persians settle at the east African coast between 1000 and 1500 AD**

EFFECTS OF ARAB SETTLEMENT AT THE EAST AFRICAN COAST

The effects of Arab settlement were political, social and economic. Some were negative and others were positive.

POSITIVE EFFECTS

- Initially, population increased at the east African coast due to the coming of the Arabs.
- Since they were Muslims, they introduced Islamic religion at the east African coast.
- Arabic architecture of building flat topped houses using bricks, arches, domes was introduced.
- Besides, mosques were built for example Husuni Kubwa mosque at Kilwa which was the biggest building south of the coast.
- The art of boat building was introduced at the east African coast.
- They introduced new forms of currency cowrie-shells and coins minted by some towns like Kilwa and Sofala.
- There were intermarriages between the Arabs and the local Africans which gave rise to the Swahili race.
- The Swahili race led to the development of Kiswahili language at the east African coast.
- It also led to the birth of Swahili culture at the east African coast.
- New forms of dressing like kanzus, and turbans for men and veils for women were introduced.
- Moslem habits like fasting, eating etc. were spread at the coast.
- Arabic was introduced as the official language at the coast.
- Guns were introduced at the coast which led to improvement in the security.
- As such, new forms of weapons like daggers, swords etc. were introduced at the coast.
- Fighting increased among the coastal towns due to the introduction of guns.
- Sharia law (Islamic administration) was introduced leading to improvement in administration at the coast.
- Agriculture and fishing intensified to feed the increased population at the coast.
- New crops like banana, wheat, oranges etc were introduced at the coast.
- Arabic foods like rice, chapatti, pepper etc. were introduced at the east African coast.
- Food etiquettes like sitting cross-legged were introduced at the east African coast.
- The use of human faeces as manure was introduced by the Arabs at the east African coast.
- Quranic schools were built to promote Islamic literacy at the east African coast.

- Trade boomed /increased at the coast due to their coming.
- People abandoned native economic activities like fishing, farming and hunting for trade.
- They introduced the minting and the use of coins at the east African coast which promoted trade.
- East Africa was linked to the outside world since the coast had become an international market.
- Their coming led to the prosperity of the coastal people who participated in the Indian ocean trade.
- The standard of living of the bantu at the coast improved due to the prosperous trade.
- Many coastal towns developed due to the coming of the Arabs like kilwa, sofa,Mogadishu etc.
- New commodities were introduced to the Africans for example clothes,beads,glassware etc.
- The relationship between the Arabs and the Africans increased at the coast.

NEGATIVE EFFECTS

- It led to the decline in the local industries as the imported Arab goods flooded the market leading to the collapse of the local industries and technology e.g. textiles and craft.
- Their settlement led to rural-urban migration and its associated evils like unemployment,prostitution,high crime rates etc.
- Rivalry(conflicts)for the control of trade increased for example between Malindi and Mombasa,kilwa and sofala etc.
- The increased demand for slaves increased slave raiding,warfare and insecurity leading to the development of slave trade.
- The raids also resulted into misery and suffering among the coastal [people.
- Inter-tribal wars in the interior increased due to the introduction of guns.
- There was loss of lives due to the constant slave raids which resulted into depopulation.
- There also loss of cultures (de-tribalization/de-culturalistion) of the coastal people.
- The coastal people lost their Independence to the Arabs.
- These Arab immigrants became rulers over the local Africans at the coast and Arabic titles like sultan, sheikh were adopted by the coastal leaders.

- Their coming led to the exhaustion of African resources like minerals, wild life and human resources due to over exploitation.
- The prosperity of the coastal towns later attracted the Portuguese who plundered the coastal towns leading to their decline.

Qn. How did the Arab settlement at the east African coast affect the local people

LIFE AT THE EAST AFRICAN COAST (1000-1500 AD)

- Between 1000-1500 ad, the east African coast was inhabited by three different groups of people.
- These were the Arabs and Persians, Cushite's and the bantu.
- They participated in the Indian ocean trade leading to their prosperity.
- This trade had exports like slaves,ivory,copper etc. while imports include beads, glassware, clothes etc.
- This trade led to the development of towns like Zanzibar,Mombasa, sofaetc. at the coast.
- These towns were ruled by either a sultan or a sheikh.
- Some were fortified and others were built on islands for example Zanzibar.
- There were intermarriages between the Arabs and the local people at the coast.
- As a result of the intermarriages, anew race of culture developed at the coast.
- This was the Swahili race and Swahili cultural race respectively.
- There was also development of Kiswahili language at the coasty which made communication easy.
- Islam became a main religion and many mosques and Islamic schools were built to promote Islamic literature.
- Islamic monuments were also built with Arabic words inscribed on them.
- Islamic teachers were trained to promote the teachingof Islamic literature.
- Arabic became the official language at the east African coast.
- Sharia law became the basis of the judicial dispensation at the coast.
- The Arabic ways of dressing were introduced whereby veils for women and kanzus for men became very common.

- Arabic architecture flourished with many flat topped houses being built at the coast.
- There were coastal conflicts like Mombasa versus Malindi.
- Agriculture was practiced and crops like millet, banana, rice etc. were grown.
- Handcraft was also practiced and they made mats, baskets etc.
- Animals like goat's sheep's were also reared.
- A rich class of people grew at the coast because of their involvement in the trade.
- The Arab imposed themselves as rulers over the local people.

Qn. Describe the way of life at the coast between 1000 and 1500 ad at the coast

DEVELOPMENT OF THE EAST AFRICAN COASTAL TOWNS

FACTORS FOR THE GROWTH OF THE COASTAL STATES BETWEEN 1000-1500 AD.

- Between 1000-1500 ad, total of 30 towns had developed along the east African coast.
- These towns include Malindi, Kilwa, Mombasa, Zanzibar, Mogadishu, Pemba etc.
- These towns were independent of each other. each had its own ruler and the different towns often quarreled with each in order to control the trade.
- Towns that took control of the trade became the most powerful towns at the east African coast.
- The absorption and displacement of hunters and the food gatherers by the Cushites and the bantu who later developed these towns.
- The lucrative Indian Ocean trade created wealth that was used to develop the coastal towns.
- For example, Kilwa benefited in the sale of gold and Mombasa benefited from the sale of ivory and slaves.
- The trade also led to the introduction of guns and swords which led to the improvement in the security.

- The presence of monsoon winds that eased the transportation of goods using the dhows to and from the coastal towns promoted development.
- The introduction of Islam which acted as unifying factor for all Muslims in the coastal towns led to their development.
- The use of sharia law brought law and order in the region leading to the development.
- The introduction of cowrie –shells improved trade which led to the development of coastal towns.
- The presence of highly demanded goods like gold, copper, slaves and silver etc. increased the volume of trade leading to the development of trade.
- The coming of foreigners like bantu, Cushite's, Egyptians, Syrians and the Arabs boosted the coastal population.
- Some bantu practiced iron working and produced iron implements for agriculture and defense.
- The coastal climate was ideal and cool for the human settlement which attracted many foreigners.
- The presence of fertile soils guaranteed constant food supply to the coastal people.
- Most towns developed on islands giving them added nature protection from mainland attacks like Zanzibar and Pemba.
- The good nature harbors which could accommodate big ships from middle east, far-east and Europe also favored development.
- Taxation of visiting traders ensured a steady source of revenue for development.
- The development and the use Kiswahili language eased communication and aided development among the coastal towns.
- Some towns developed because they controlled major items like gold which controlled gold trade.
- The good leadership provided by the coastal leaders like the afro-shirazi rulers led to the development of coastal towns.
- The minting of coins by some coastal towns like Kilwa and Malindi improved the trade transactions leading to development.
- The presence of cheap labour for loading and off-loading goods also boosted development.

- The hospitality of the coastal people who were welcoming to the foreigners favored the coming of the Arabs and the Persians.
- The introduction of Arab and Persian architecture of building flat topped houses beautified the coastal towns.

GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT OF COASTAL TOWNS

KILWA

Kilwa was probably founded by the Persian migrants. They displaced the Cushites and Bantu around the 13th century.

Its rulers were the Afro-Shiraz who came from the Banadir coast. They established a strong dynasty and controlled the town up to the time of the Portuguese.

During Ali Ibn-Al Hassan, Kilwa was transformed into a very powerful town. He conquered areas like Pemba which improved her status at the coast.

Kilwa developed due to its monopoly in Gold trade and she controlled the Gold trade route from Sofala

Kilwa also carried out raids on her neighbours like Pemba and Mafia which provided revenue.

Kilwa became a centre of Arabic Architecture ie mosques and impressive flat topped houses were built.

Kilwa had the biggest mosque called Husni Kubwa which was one of the wonders at the coast.

Kilwa also became the centre of Islam that is it had Moslems who were devoted to the spread of Islam.

Many of them penetrated into the interior of East Africa to acquire trade items like slaves and ivory.

With time, Kilwa started minting its own silver and copper coins to facilitate trade.

By the end of the 15th century, Kilwa had started declining. This was due to the emergence of Mombasa and coming of the Portuguese in 1498.

MALINDI

Malindi was located between Zanzibar and Mogadishu. It was founded in the 12th century .at the same time as Mombasa.

The earliest people were the Cushite's and the Bantu in the interior.

Its rulers were originally Africans, but later the Arabs and the Persians took over.

Malindi grew as an export center for iron implements, silver, silk and beads.

The strategic location of the town favored its growth. Because it favored the loading and offloading of the ships.

The coming of Islam brought about the Islamic way of life and administration.

The Sheikhs and the Sultan became the new rulers of the towns.

The Sultans collected taxes and revenue from the imports and the exports. They also settled disputes among the people.

Later, council of Muslims was put in place to assist the sheikhs and the sultans in the maintain of law and order.

The coming of Arabs also led to the introduction of Arabic style of building which beautified the towns.

As time went by, great rivalry grew between Malindi and Mombasa. Sometimes, Malindi allied with kilwa to try to reduce Mombasa's power.

When the Portuguese arrived, Malindi received them with open hands in order to reduce on the powers of Mombasa

MOMBASA

Little is known on the early history of Mombasa. However, it is assumed that the town was founded in the 12th century.

It was located between Mogadishu and Zanzibar.

Just like kilwa, it was founded by the descendants of the Shirazi people.

They displaced the Cushite's and the Bantu who had already settled in this place.

Mombasa remained a small town until the 15th century when it suddenly expanded because of trade. It developed because of the trade with the Arabs.

It was founded as an export center of slaves and ivory to the outside world like Arabia.

Mombasa was a beautiful city built with stones and flat topped houses.

It had large streets and spacious roads by the time Sultan Ibn Battuta's arrived.

Its people were of two races; a mixture of Arabs and Africans. She therefore became a center of Swahili culture as a result of the intermarriages.

Its rulers were initially Africans but later the Swahilis, Sultans and Sheikhs took over its control. These were from the Persian ruling family.

It participated in the Indian ocean trade where they were able to get millet, sheep, goats rice etc.

The good natural harbors which would allow the big ships to anchor for loading and off-loading increased the volume of trade.

Mombasa location between the Arabia and East African coast which helped her to grow.

Mosques and Quran schools were built and most of the inhabitants were committed Muslims.

Mombasa was always at war with her neighbours especially Malindi. By the 16th century, Mombasa was one of the most powerful towns at the coast.

With the advent of the Portuguese in 1500AD, the Mombasa put up one of the greatest resistance.

ZANZIBAR

It was among the first places to be settled by the Arab and Persian origin.

It's believed that the earliest known trading post of qanbah was built in Pemba island.

Probably Zanzibar began its life in the 11th century. This was following the arrival of the Persians and the Arabs on the islands.

It was called Zanj-bar meaning the coast of black people.

Zanzibar had one of the best nature harbors at the coast. The harbors brought in many traders and settlers which boosted trade and agriculture.

Between the 14th and the 15th century, Zanzibar had developed into a principle center of wealth and power.

But she was not as strong as Mombasa and Kilwa in power and influence at the coast.

At the height of Kilwa's glory, Zanzibar was probably under its influence until the 15th century.

At this time Zanzibar began minting her own coins as a sign of its independence.

She gained a lot of wealth in the Indian Ocean trade.

She maintained trade contacts with the India, Arabia and Persia.

All the buildings and architecture followed the Arabia and Persians styles.

People dressed in Silk, fine clothes and decorated Arab gowns.

There were packed buildings, some were built with stones and flat roofed.

Writing on walls and tombstones were in Arabic script of various styles.

Wells were built of stones and water was often stored in the cisterns in the houses.

DECLINE OF THE COASTAL TOWNS

- Towards AD 1500, most of the coastal towns had started declining. This was probably due to the following factors.
- The activities of the sea pirates disrupted the Indian Ocean trade which led to its decline upon which the towns depended.
- Disunity of the coastal states undermined peace and prosperity leading to their decline.
- Rivalry among the coastal towns for example Mombasa against Malindi undermined development.

- Trade items like gold, ivory etc. had become scarce leading to the decline of the Indian ocean trade and consequently the coastal towns.
- The coming of the Portuguese was the main reason for the collapse of the coastal towns.
- The Portuguese created wars at the coast and disrupted trade.
- There were cultural and religious differences between the coastal people and the Portuguese.
- The religious differences between Christianity and Islam which undermined peace and stability at the coast.
- The Portuguese chased away the Arabas' who had developed the coast.
- They destroyed the gardens and farms which led to the outbreak of famine.
- The Portuguese looted and burnt the coastal towns like Kilwa and Mombasa.
- They also over taxed the coastal people which made them to become poor.
- Portuguese officials were dishonest and corrupt and kept money from the taxes to themselves, hence did little to develop the towns.
- The effects of slave trade devastated some of the coastal towns leading to their decline.
- The Seguju and Zimbal cannibals from the Zambezi valley also devastated some towns like Mombasa affected trade leading to the decline of the coastal towns.

NB: factors for the decline of the coastal towns = factors for the decline of the Indian ocean trade.

Qn. What factors led to the decline of the coastal towns after 1500 AD

Qn. Why did the Indian ocean trade decline after 1500 AD

THE INDIAN OCEAN TRADE

- This was the trade between the east African coast and the outside world across the Indian ocean.
- It can also have referred to as an Indian ocean trade /the coastal trade/the trans Indian ocean trade /the east African external trade/the trade between Asia and the east African coast.
- This trade developed with the coming of the Arabs at the east African coast.
- It also developed because the coast provided ideal climate, a variety of trade goods, the good natural harbor etc.

- **BACKGROUND INFORMATION ON THE INDIAN OCEAN TRADE.**
- The Indian ocean trade began with the small trading settlements around 800 A.D, and ended in the 1500s when Portugal invaded and tried to run the trade for its own profit.
- As trade intensified between Africa, And Asia, powerful city states flourished along the coast of east Africa. these included kilwa, Mombasa and Malindi etc.
- The city-states traded with the inland kingdoms like great Zimbabwe to obtain gold, ivory and iron.
- These materials were then sold to places like India, south east Asia and china.
- These were Africa's exports in the Indian ocean trade. these items could be sold at a profit because they were scarce in Asian countries.
- At the same time, the east African city states were buying items from Asia. Many residents of the city states were willing to pay high prices for cotton, silk and porcelain objects. These items were expensive because they were not available in Africa at that time. These were Africa's imports in the Indian Ocean trade.
- The city states along the east African coast were ideal centers of trade .an important attraction was the gold obtained from the inland kingdoms. The gold was mainly needed for coins, although it was also used for works of art, ornamentation on building and jewelries.

The city states were easy to reach from Asia by ship because of the favorable wind and ocean currents. ships had no trouble docking at the excellent ports and harbors to the coasts of the city-states, making it easy to unload and load cargo. And merchants tired after their long overseas journey, enjoyed the finer restaurants, lodging and entertainment offered by the port cities.

- Finally, east Africa was peaceful region, and the few conflicts that did occur were small's and brief. All of these factors created an ideal setting for import or export companies to conduct business.
- Many of the merchants from the Arabian Peninsula, India and south east Asian stayed in the city states of east Africa. Inter-racial marriages were not uncommon, and gradually over the centuries, a new and distinct ethnic group developed, known as the Swahili. today millions of Swahili people live in the nations of east Africa, where the Swahili language is widely spoken, Kiswahili language is a mixture of Arabic, Hindi and bantu languages.

- The Swahili city –states steadily grew and prospered, and were major world economic power by the 1400s.

MAP

THE RISE AND DEVELOPMENT OF THE INDIAN OCEAN TRADE.

- The trade developed because the coast provided ideal climate, variety of trade goods and the good natural harbors.
- The coming of the foreigners like the Arabs, Greeks, Persians, Syrians etc. who traded with the Cushite's and the bantu.
- The displacement of the hunters and the food gatherers by the Cushite's and the Bantu.
- The presences of the African middlemen like the nyika and the makalanga who connected the foreign trader to the local traders.
- The presence of slaves that acted as porters carrying goods from one point to another.
- The presences of highly demanded imports like guns, mirrors, clothes etc led the increase in the trade.
- The presence of highly demanded exports like beads plates, guns etc.
- Specialization by some coastal towns which monopolized the sale of certain goods like sofa and kilwa dominated the gold trade while Mombasa dominated the trade in ivory and slaves.
- The presence of Islam which cemented unity among the traders led to its development.
- The development if Kiswahili language which acted as a business language made communication among the traders easy.
- The presence of the monsoon winds which favored the movements of the Arabs to tube coast.
- The availability of able leadership provides by the Afro-Arabs who organized the trade.
- The minting of the coins at the coast made transaction easy hence leading to the development of the trade.
- The presence of wide market provided by the people at the coast and the Asians.
- The strategic location and the good harbors favored the off-loading and loading of goods.
- The presence of fertile soils at the coast provided a basis for food production.
- The hospitality of the coastal people attracted the foreigners.
- The rise of powerful towns like kilwa, Mombasa etc which acted as markets.

Qn. What factors led to the development of the Indian Ocean trade

ORGANISATION OF THE INDIAN OCEAN TRADE BEFORE AD 1500

The trade involved both foreign and local traders. foreign traders were the Arabs, Persians, Syrians etc.

These foreigners were trading with the Cushite's and Bantu in the east African coast.

These foreign traders used small vessels called dhows to come to the coast.

These dhows were blown seasonal by the monsoon winds.

From November –April the monsoon winds blown the dhows towards Africa while from May-October, they blew towards the Asian continent.

The Bantu tribes controlled the trade between the interior and the coast while the coastal people took over as middle men at the coast.

This trade involved both export and import trade. The major imports included guns, beads, clothes etc.

While the exports included slaves, copper, ivory etc.

Most of the exports were obtained from the interior of east Africa and they passed through many hands before they could reach the coast.

These goods were transported by the middlemen like the nyika and the makaranga using the head portorage.

Trade items were mainly exported through the Indian ocean and to a smaller extent the red sea and the Mediterranean Sea.

Slaves were obtained through carrying out raids and were sold at the coast.

They were exported to the middle east to work as domestic servants. Soldiers and miners etc.

Ivory was obtained by hunting down elephants and was sold mainly at the coastal town of sofa.

Ivory was exported to china and was used for making bangles,ornaments,bracelets etc.

Gold was obtained from monomotapa kingdom and was mainly sold at sofa and kilwa.

At first, traders used barter trade system which involved exchanging of goods for goods.

Later, cowrie-shells from Maldives islands were introduced and used as currency.

With time. Towns like kilwa, and Zanzibar minted and started using coins.

The medium of communication was Kiswahili language.

Goods were transported by head portorage from the interior to the coast.

Foreign traders did not enter the interior fearing the hostility of some tribes, wild animal and diseases etc.

The trade was controlled by the wealthy Arabs banyans and African chiefs at the east African coast.

Some Arabs who had come to trade decided to settle permanently at the coast.

Trading centers at the east African coast included kilwa, Malindi, Zanzibar, Mombasa etc.

The most important ports of call included Yemen, hadramont, Oman and hormuz.

Qn. How was the Indian ocean trade organized by 1500 AD

EFFECTS OF THE INDIAN OCEAN TRADE

- The effects of the trade were political, social and economic, some were negative while others were positive.

POSTIVE EFFECTS

- Islam was introduced by the Arab traders and flourished at the coast.
- Arabic style of building flat topped houses using bricks was introduced.
- The trade led to the introduction of the art of boat building at the coast by the Arabs.
- It led to the introduction of new forms of currency at the coast like cower-shells.
- It also led to the minting and use of coins by some of the coastal towns.
- The trade led to intermarriages between the Arabs and the coastal people.
- As a result, a new race called Swahili and anew language called Kiswahili came up.

- New forms of dressing like the putting on kanzus, turbans and veils were introduced at the coast.
- It led to the development of Swahili culture at the coast.
- It also led to the spread of Muslim habits like eating, fasting etc.
- Arabic language was introduced and it became the official language at the coast.
- It led to the introduction of new trade items like gun, beads clothes etc.
- The introduction of guns at the coast led to the improvement in the security.
- Agriculture and fishing intensified to feed the increased population.
- New crops like banana, sugarcane, wheat, rice were introduced by the Arab traders.
- The trade led to the development of many coastal towns like kilwa, sofa etc.
- The standard of living of the Bantu at the coast improved due to the prosperous trade.

NEGATIVE EFFECTS

- This led to the decline in the local industries as imported goods flooded the market.
- It also led to the increased fighting among the coastal people due to the introduction of guns.
- It also led to rural-urban migration with its associated evils like high crime rates due to the development of towns.
- It also led to the exhaustion of African resources like minerals, wild life and human resources due to over exploitation.
- There was also rivalry and conflicts over the control of trade for example between Malindi and Mombasa, kilwa and sofa.
- The coastal people abandoned native economic activities like fishing and farming for trade which increased the food prices.
- Coastal prosperity later attracted the Portuguese who plundered the coastal towns.

Qn. What were the effects of the Indian ocean trade on the peoples of east Africa

THE RISE OF SWAHILI CULTURE AT THE EAST AFRICAN COAST

THE MAIN CHARACTERISTICS OF LIFE AT THE EAST AFRICAN COAST DURING THE SWAHILI CULTURE

- The word Swahili comes from Arabic word Swahili meaning the “coast”.
- Swahili culture began with the Arab contacts on the east African coast.
- \at times its referred to as the Afro-Arabic culture.
- It developed at the east African coast between the 13th and the 15th century.
- This was complete civilization since it borrowed much from the Arabic and African way of life.
- When the Africans and the Arabsintermarried, the Swahili culture developed between them.
- Anew life, race and culture developed with the characteristics borrowed from the Arabs from the ArabiaandPersian Gulf and some ideas from the African traditions.
- Through intermarriages of a long period of time, people of admixed brown color were formed.
- They spoke a unique language called Kiswahili borrowing from African and Arabic words.
- They relied more on Arabic writing and also Arabic way of life.
- The Quran became the guiding principle in their way of life.
- Mosques were set up for worshipping god and strengthening Islamfor example the great mosque at kilwa.
- They used the Arabic styles of building flat topped houses built out of stones.
- Wells were also built using stones and water was stored in the Arabic way.
- They were traders who traded with the outside world.
- They became very rich and lived Avery good life.
- They also decorated their walls with carpets, gold, silver etc.
- The Swahili people had social classes which included ruling families, Land owners, religious leaders, skilled and non-skilled labors etc.
- The sharia law was used by the Arabs to law and justice among the people basing on the Islamic principles.
- They ate a lot of rice,millet, lemons, oranges and vegetables which they got through trade.
- They domestically kept animals and animals like hens, cows, goats etc.

- Fishing was also important among the Swahili in order to supplement on their diet.
- They also set up coco nuts and banana plantations on some islands like Zanzibar and Pemba.

Qn. Describe the way of life of the coastal people during the Swahili culture

EFFECTS OF THE SWAHILI CULTURE ON THE COASTAL PEOPLE

- Kiswahili language developed at the east African coast.
- New crops like bananas, rice, coconuts etc. were introduced at the east African coast.
- Mosques were set up at the coast for worshipping and strengthening of Islam.
- Islamic faith was spread at the east African coast.
- The Arabic way of dressing was introduced like men wore kanzus and caps while women wore shariaz and veils.
- The sharia law of administration was brought at the coast.
- Koranic schools at the coast were built to promote literacy.
- New commodities like clothes, beads, guns etc. were introduced since the Swahili people participated in the trade.
- It led to the development of the Indian Ocean trade.
- New forms of currency like cowrie shells, coins were introduced.
- It led to the development of coastal towns like Malindi, Kilwa etc.
- It led to the increase in the population at the east African coast.
- Agriculture and fishing was increased to feed the increased population.
- Islamic monuments with Islamic words inscribed on them were formed.
- Islamic teachers were trained to teach Islamic faith.
- The towns were either ruled by the sultan or sheikhs.
- Inter-marriages between the coastal people and the Arabs increased.
- Animals and domestic like hens, sheep, goats etc. at the coast were reared.

Qn. How were the coastal people affected by the Swahili culture

THE PORTUGUESE AT THE COAST

The Portuguese were the 1st people to settle permanently at the east African coast. Their coming followed Vasco da Gama discovery of the sea route between 1497 and 1498. His venture in India impressed the Portuguese and inspired them to occupy the east African coast.

REASONS FOR THE COMING OF THE PORTUGUESE.

They wanted to establish a commercial empire to help them dominate the profitable Indian ocean trade.

The presences of highly demanded goods like ivory, spices, gold and other precious stones might have attracted them.

They wanted to obtain wealth from the east African coast.

They also wanted to reduce on the Arab monopoly of the east African coast.

They wanted to exploit the coastal towns through forcing them to pay annual tributes.

They wanted to prevent the growing of Islamic faith at the east African coast and revenge on the Muslims.

The good natural harbors at the coast provided shipping facility favorable for loading and off-loading ships.

As Christians, they wanted to spread Christianity at the east African coast.

They were looking for legendary king John Prester pester believed to be in the interior to help them Christianize the coastal people.

The strategic location of the east African coast might have attracted them.

The coast was ideal for repairing vessels and route to India to get fresh supplies.

They were searching for a direct route to India which was rich in a variety of spices.

East Africa was also located mid-way between India and Portugal which favored trade.

They wanted to avoid the traditional land routes under the Muslim control.

They wanted to revenge against the Muslims who had overran the Iberian Peninsula.

East Africa would provide bases for Portuguese ships and troops in case of war.

The spirit of adventure and exploration spearheaded by prince henry the navigator was another reason for the coming of the Portuguese at the coast.

They wanted to prevent other European rivals from gaining access to the east African coast.

They also believed that controlling the coast would prevent the Egyptians, Persians and the Turkish forces from brothers at the coast.

The Portuguese also wanted to control the coastal people.

PORTUGUESE CONQUEST OF THE EAST AFRICAN COAST (1498-1510)

In 1487, king John II of Portugal sent Pedro da Covhila to India over land. Pedro spent time travelling along the indian ocean and countries bordering it gathering important information upto 1491.

In 1488, Batholomew Diaz became the first Captain to sail around the cape of Good Hope but never reached India.

In 1494, Portugal signed atreaty of Tordesilas with Spain which gave Portugal a right to explore and establish themselves in Africa and India.

Between 1497-98, Vasco da Gama made a successful journey to India and saw a lot of wealth like gold in Sofala, reached Mozambique on 1st March 1498 and on 24th April he was in Malindi.

In 1499, Vasco da Gama returned to Portugal and reported his discoveries to King Emmanuel Fortunate.

In 1500, Pedroaltars cabral made an un successful attack on sofala hoping to control its gold trade.

In 1502, Vasco da gama returned on his second journey to the coast with a heavily armed fleet of 19 ships and 1500 soldiers. He attacked kilwa because of its gold and seized sultan Ibrahim and his palace.

Sultan Ibrahim was only released after recognizing Portuguese sovereignty and tribute was imposed.

During this time, the Sultan of Malindi refused to cooperate with Mombasa against the Portuguese.

In 1503, Ruy Lourenco Ravasco came and was able to conquer Zanzibar, Mafia and other small towns and forced them to pay tribute to Portugal.

In 1504, Lopez Suarez was sent to suppress Kilwa that had rebelled. He made an unsuccessful attack on Kilwa and its harbors but disrupted the gold trade.

In 1505, Francisco D'Almeida the 1st viceroy of Goa came with a large expedition of 20 warships. He managed to attack Sofala, Kilwa, and Mombasa but Sofala surrendered without struggle.

The 1,500 men then attacked Kilwa, overthrew the sultan and a new ruler was appointed. The sultan and the people of Kilwa fled the town, it was then destroyed and its fine architecture looted.

Mombasa tried to resist but it was defeated and looted by the Portuguese.

D'Almeida's junior commander accomplished the conquest by erecting stone forts around Kilwa and Sofala.

Between 1506-07, Tristao da Cunha invaded the islands of Oja, Bravo, Lamu, Pate and Socotra.

Some towns like Lamu quietly surrendered and accepted to pay the tributes.

Towns that co-operated and welcomed the Portuguese like Malinda were exempted from paying taxes.

In 1509, Alfonso Albuquerque came and overran Mafia, Pemba and Zanzibar putting them under the Portuguese control.

In the same year, Dom Duarte delmos visited Mafia, Pemba and Zanzibar and forced them to pay tributes. He also defeated a large Egyptian fleet at Diu.

For effective control of the coast, Alfonso Albuquerque a viceroy of India set up the headquarters at Goa.

By 1510 AD, the entire east African coast was under the Portuguese control.

Two captains were appointed to govern the east African coast.

One of the south was to be based at Mozambique and the one for the north at Malinda.

Qn. Describe the steps taken by the Portuguese to conquered the east African coast between 1498-1510.

SUMMARY OF THE PORTUGUESE CONQUEST OF THE EAST AFRICAN COAST (1498-1510)

YEAR	PERSONALITY	ACTIVITY/EVENT
1497-98	Vasco da Gama	Discovered the sea route to India
1499		Decision to take over the coast was made. Reasons being good climate, strategic location etc.
1500	Pedro alvars carbal	Made an unsuccessful attack on Sofala hoping to control of the gold trade.
1502	Vasco da Gama	Made a U- turn journey to the coast He came with 19 warships Attacked Kilwa Deposed the sultan only to be returned after accepting Portuguese rule and paying tributes
1503	Ruy-lourenco raves	Attacked the islands of Zanzibar, Pemba, and Mafia
1504	Lopez Suarez	Made a forceful attack on rebellious Kilwa However he disrupted the gold trade
1505	Francisco d'almeida	Came with 20 warships and 1500 soldiers Attacked Sofala, Kilwa and Mombasa Sofala quietly surrendered Kilwa rebelled but was destroyed and looted. Mombasa tried to resist but was defeated and left in ruins
1506-7	Tristao da chuncha	Completed the conquest by erecting stone forts Conquered small islands of Oja, Brava, Pemba, Lamu etc.

1509	Alfonso d'albuquerque	Conquered mafia, Pemba and Zanzibar
1509	Dom Duarte delmos	Defeated a large Egyptian fleet at diu
1510		The entire East African coast was under the Portuguese Two captains were appointed to rule.

WHY THE PORTUGUESE WERE SUCCESSFUL IN THE CONQUERING THE COAST

The Portuguese easily conquered the east African coast because of the following reasons.

They had prior knowledge about the east African coast ie they had surveyed the coast through viscos da Gama who provided them with relevant information about the east African coast.

They had modern and superior weapons than the coastal; people like they had the canon guns.

They were well protected in that they wore masks which protected them against the Africans.

They had large ships called carracks which carried a lot of supplies for them.

They were militarily and tactically superior on the sea compared to the Africans in that they had better navy fighters.

They also had humble, brave, determined and competent leaders and commanders like Francisco D'Almeida.

Africans were also disunited and fighting each other like Malinda and Mombasa were always at war hence could not join hands to fight against the Portuguese.

They had enough funds and support from home which enabled them to defeat Africans.

There was also lack of competition from European powers which made them successful.

The Portuguese used surprise attacks which caught the Africans unaware.

The Portuguese ruthlessness and brutality scared many Africans in that they burnt, destroyed and plundered a lot of wealth and property.

The Portuguese determination to rule the coast also led to their success. The Portuguese also used the system of rule and divide like they allied with Malinda to fight Kilwa and Mombasa.

The coastal people had been weakened by the constant diseases, famine and slave trade therefore they could not fight the Portuguese.

Some coastal towns had been weakened by Kilwa expansionist policy.

The weak economies of coastal towns could not enable them to sustain war with Portugal were richer.

Other coastal towns had been weakened by the constant attacks from the Seguju and the Zimba.

PORTUGUESE ADMINISTRATION OF THE EAST AFRICAN COAST 1510-1698

After the final conquest of the East African coast, the Portuguese started away with effective administration.

Alfonso d'Albuquerque, the Portuguese viceroy in India made Goa his headquarters while Sofala in Mozambique was made the regional headquarter.

The coast was divided into two, the area north of Cape Delgado and the area south of Cape Delgado.

Cape Delgado was made the midpoint of the East African possession.

The area north of Cape Delgado was under one captain stationed at Malinda while the captain of the southern area was stationed at Mozambique.

Each region was under a captain which was answerable to the viceroy at Goa (India).

In subsequent years, Mombasa came to have its own captain.

The role of the captain was to collect import and export duties and tributes from the local leaders.

They were supposed to suppress any resistance and rebellions at the East African coast.

They were also supposed to maintain law and order and therefore punished the law breakers.

They used divide and rule policy where they sided with one state against another state like they allied with Malinda against Mombasa.

Where indirect rule failed, the Portuguese applied direct rule.

Their rule was dictatorial, tyrannical and brutal and this made them to be hated leading to constant rebellions by the art abs and Swahilis.

They employed corrupt officials who embezzled all the collected dues and at times even imported had core criminals from Portugal to act as administrators.

They built forts and garrisons like fort Jesus in Mombasa in order to strengthen their power.

They were hated by the coastal people who even nick named them “aftri” meaning devils.

There were constant rebellions by the coastal in abide to overthrow them.

They discouraged trade in slaves and ivory and only encouraged trade in gold.

Smuggling and looting of gold and other valuable properties was common during their rule.

They introduced the changing of annual tributes and taxes on the coastal people and those who failed to pay flogged.

They kept the coastal people in absolute poverty due to the heavy taxes they introduced.

They tried to spread Christianity at the east African coast but failed.

Generally, life under the Portuguese was unproductive, oppressive and disappointing to the coastal people.

PROBLEMS FACED BY THE PORTUGUESE AT THE EAST AFRICAN COAST

- The Portuguese controlled the east African coast for about 200 years.
- During their rule, they faced problems which were political, social and economic in nature.
- Politically, there was constant resistances from the coastal towns like Mombasa.
- Portugal was also a small and poor country hence lacked funds to effectively facilitate its activities at the east African coast.

- It was also difficult to administer scattered settlement at the east African coast.
- The Portuguese officials at the coast were dishonest, corrupt and kept money from taxes for themselves.
- They lacked enough ships to effectively monitor the east African coast.
- They were hated by the coastal people because of their greed, arrogance and the poor relations.
- The union of Spain and Portugal between 1580-1640 made Portugal too busy with domestic affairs than the coast.
- They faced constant attacks from their traditional enemies like the Arabs and the Turks who wanted to support their mole brothers at the coast.
- There were also constant attacks from the Turkish pirates who constantly raided Portuguese settlements.
- The seguju and the gimbal cannibals from the Zambezi valley devastated Kilwa, Malinda and Mombasa.
- They were attacked by tropical diseases like yellow fever and malaria which claimed many of the Portuguese lives.
- The harsh climatic conditions at the coast also made life difficult for the Portuguese.
- Language differences made communication difficult between the Portuguese and the coastal people.
- The distance between Portugal and the coast was too long for effective administration therefore communication became so difficult.
- Portugal and Goa were too far and hence help could not be got easily in case of any problem.
- Religious differences between Christianity and Islam weakened their administration since the Moors weren't willing to give up their religion yet the Portuguese forced Christianity on them.
- The arrival of more powerful powers like the Dutch, British also weakened them.
- Attacks from the Oman Arabs and Persians finally led to the overthrow of the Portuguese in 1698 when they captured Fort Jesus.

Qn. What problems did the Portuguese face in the administration of the east African coast

EFFECTS OF THE PORTUGUESE RULE ON THE EAST AFRICAN COAST.

- The Portuguese controlled the east African coast for close to 200 years most of the effects were negative much as some were [positive.

NEGATIVE EFFECTS.

- The Portuguese caused several wars which led to the decline of the coastal trade.
- Most of the coastal towns declined for example Mombasa and kilwa while others like gedi even decayed.
- They looted the coastal towns and left most of them in ruins.
- Some towns were burnt or destroyed for example Mombasa and kilwa.
- They displaced the MuslimArabs who had controlled the coast.
- They also broke the Arab monopoly of the Indian Ocean trade.
- The divide and rule policy worsened the disunity among the coastal towns.
- There raids on the coast resulted into the destruction of crops and loss of property like kilwa and Mombasa.
- As a result, wide spread of famine was experienced at the east African coast.
- Portuguese agents were brutal, inefficient and corrupt.
- They caused several rebellions at the east African coast.
- They brutalized the coastal people which led to loss of lives.
- They imposed heavy taxes on the coastal people.
- The heavy taxes and corruption resulted into [poverty among the coastal people.
- Their presence at the coast increased insecurity which interrupted the coastal culture.
- They were hated and called “aftri” (devils) by the coastal people.
- They subjected Africans to forced labor in the construction of the forts.
- They were discriminative like they built their own churches and had their own priests.

POSITIVE EFFECTS

- They introduced new food crops and fruits like cassava, pineapples, tobacco, groundnut, paw paws, etc.
- They added few words to Kiswahili language like meza, pesa, namasi and karata.
- They introduced a number of games like playing cards (karata).
- They encouraged the use of cow dung as soil fertilizers.
- They improved on the building of ships at the coast.

- They introduced new architecture like building using bricks.
- They introduced Christianity and built a number of churches but only small numbers were converted to Christianity.
- They left behind some buildings or monuments like fort Jesus and viscos da Gama pillar which became tourist attractions.
- They established strong links between east Africa and the outside world.
- They encouraged the coming of many Indians at the coast.
- They strengthened diplomatic ties with the Indians by making goa theirheadquarters.
- They led to the arrival of more traders to the European countries like Britain, Holland etc.

Qn. How did the Portuguese settlement affect the coastal people?

CHARPTER 4:THE OMAN ARABS AT THE COAST

THE OMAN ARABS AND THE EAST AFRICAN COAST.

- The relationship between the east African coast and Arab world started way back before the coming of the Portuguese when the Arabs who were from Omans settled at the coast.
- The OmanArabs played an important role in the trading contacts between Oman and the coast and had been firmly established by the time the Portuguese's came into scene.
- We have already seen that it was the Oman troops who assisted in the over throw of the Portuguese when fort Jesuswas captured in 1698.
- When the Portuguese were defeated, it was quite clear that no other power challenged the position of the imam of the Oman. He therefore declared his rule over the coastal and chose his own representative (legalism)as rulers of different towns at the coast.
- These people had to collect taxes and had to administer the coast on behalf of the sultan to whom they were answerable. Unfortunately, the new rulers provided ruthless and oppressive and many towns rebelled against the Oman governors.
- In 1724,kilwa managed to declare its self-independent of Oman, but as trade increased later on especially during the period of slave trade, kilwa proved too profitable to be left alone.as a result,there arose a century of conflicts between the rulers of Oman and Mazrui of Mombasa.

THE YORUBI RULERS OF OMAN.

- Up until 1741, the rulers of Oman were members of the Yoruba dynasty.

- During their reign, Oman had many problems. The pirates at the sea plundering here and there and civil wars threatened very peaceful existence of Oman. As a result, they could not control the East African coast effectively.
- To maintain his post, the Sultan of Oman was forced to appeal to Persia for military help and act which later proved detrimental to the Yoruba dynasty.
- In 1741, Sultan bin Yoruba, fell prey to a Persian soldier who shot him dead. However, the Persians did not take control of the Oman. Instead the throne passed to Ahmed bin Busaidi and with this, a new Busaidi dynasty was established.
- **THE MAZRUI GOVERNORS AND THE BUSAIDI FAMILY.**
- Just before he was killed, Sultan Saif bin, Sultan of the Yoruba dynasty had chosen Mohamed bin 'Uthman al-Mazrui who belonged to the Mazrui family the oldest Oman family in Mombasa as the ruler of Mombasa. In the same year, the Yoruba family in Muscat was overthrown and replaced by the Busaidi family, therefore, in 1741, the Mazrui family took over the governorship of Mombasa and at the same time the Busaidi family took over the throne in the Oman.
- The Busaidi vowed to have a tight control over the coastal towns Mombasa included. However, Mombasa did not wish to be dominated by other powers. It was this desire for freedom which sparked off the long struggle between the two ruling dynasties especially when Muhammad bin 'Uthman al-Mazrui refused to accept Ahmed bin Busaidi as a superior to whom he had to pay/owe allegiance.
- The Sultan was therefore left with only one choice and that was to eliminate the troublesome Mazrui governors. He sent his men to Mombasa with instructions to kill the governors of Mombasa. With this he carried out with massive success. However, the rule of the Oman Arabs was as bad as that of the Portuguese and as a result the Mazrui family did not want to be ruled again by the outsiders and therefore a long conflict began in the years between 1741-1837.
- **WHY THE OMAN ARABS WISHED TO CONTROL THE EAST AFRICAN COAST BETWEEN 1698-1867.**
- After assisting the coastal people of defeating the Portuguese in 1698, the Oman Arabs opposed themselves as new coastal masters.
- The Oman Arabs seem to have wanted to monopolize the profitable coastal trade.
- Certainly, with the fall of the Portuguese the Oman Arabs showed an open opportunity to control the East African coast.

- There was need to control the coastal people.
- There was also need to collect taxes.
- Other factors were the favorable climate at the coast compared to their home areas.
- There was need to control the east African coastal towns through their governors.
- To maintain social, economic and cultural links with the Muslims in east Africa.
- They had a plan to defeat the Mazrui of Mombasa.
- The political instability in the Oman due to the yorubi-busaidi rivalry for power in their areas made the east African coast to become an area for refuge.
- They wanted to crash Mombasa so as to prevent other coastal towns from using her as an example of a rebellion.
- Oman Arabs wanted to make sure that the Portuguese should not return to the east African coast.
- In conclusion therefore, it appeared that since the OmanArabs had played A very important role in defeating the Portuguese, they wanted to control the coast as a compensation for the effort in defeating of the Portuguese.

Qn. Why did the OmanArabs wished to control the east African coast after the defeat of the Portuguese.

CONFLICTS BETWEEN THE MAZRUI-BUSAIDI AND YORUBA ARABA AT THE EAST AFRUCAN COAST.

- During the struggle between the Arabs and the Portuguese, at the coast, the coastal Arabs(Mazrui)asked the OmanArabs(Yoruba)for assistance in 1696.
- The imam of Oman ibn sultan accepted and sent his army to surround fort Jesus, and in Dec1696, the Portuguese weredefeated. fortJesus fell into Arab hands.
- However, immediately after the defeat of Portuguese, there was a bitter conflict between the coastal Arabs (Mazrui) and the OmanArabs(busaidi).
- The Mazrui family became a source of trouble for the imams for over 100 years. They made themselves the most independent rulers of Mombasa and led revolts against the imams for 40 years, the busaidi rulers were pre-occupied with trying to control, while the Mazrui rulers of Mombasa were extending their influence along the coast.

- However, following the death of Ahmed bin al-busaidi (1744-84) the Mazrui attempted to have direct control of Oman's East African possession leading to the Mazrui-busaidi conflicts.

CAUSES OF THE BUSAIDI-MAZURUI –CONFLICTS.

- The three families were all prosperous families in the Arab world and there are many reasons to justify their struggles.
- The sultan in Oman wanted to control the coastal towns like Kilwa, Mombasa, Zanzibar etc.
- They were also struggling to obtain the sole control of the lucrative trade at the coast of East Africa.
- In addition, the sultan wanted to levy taxes on the coastal towns and this encouraged them to struggle for the control.
- Some families wanted to be independent at the coast most especially in Mombasa. The Mazrui in Mombasa had fought so much to remove the Portuguese from the East African coast so they did not want any foreign power to rule them.
- The sultan of East Africa wanted slaves in East Africa something that the Mazrui family did not want.
- The struggle occurred due to the retaliation of the coastal towns which were encouraged to rebel because of weakness of the Oman in Arabia and the sea pirates.
- The coastal towns including Mombasa wished to be independent as they had been before the coming of the Portuguese. So they did not want to lose their independence to the foreign rule among others.
- The rise of Busaidi dynasty to power in Muscat threatened the Mazrui interests at the coast. As a result, the Mazrui opened war on the Busaidi.
- The Busaidi were not happy with the Mazrui monopoly over trade at the coast. Meanwhile the Mazrui also wanted to maintain their monopoly on trade at the East African coast.
- The attempt by the Mazrui to destroy the Oman influence at the coast after the murder of Unhuman al-Mazrui led to war with the Busaidi.
- The assassination of the Yoruba dynasty which had been given powers to control the coast on their behalf.
- Both the Mazrui and the Busaidi competed to politically control the coast of East Africa.
- The Mazrui hated the Busaidi for overthrowing the Yoruba dynasty in Muscat.

- The Mazrui wanted to be independent of the Oman, which the busaidi objected.
- The Mazrui accused the OmanArabs of corruption and therefore they wanted to break away from them.
- Both Mazrui and busaidi competed to control the coast because of its strategic location.
- Both parties wanted to use the coast as a center to collect taxes (revenue) to boost their trade.
- The busaidi wanted to control the coast in order to maintain cultural links with their brothers who had fled to the coast of east Africa after the fall of the Yoruba family.
- The east African coast had good harbors that could allow refueling and anchoring of ships.
- Oman Arabs wanted full control of the coast in order to spread Islam.
- Both Mazrui and busaidi Arabs competed to control the coastal plains for agricultural production.
- The coastal states were wealthy hence the need by the Oman rulers to dominate them.

Qn. What were the causes of the busaidi-Mazrui conflicts at the east African Coast?

MAIN EVENTS IN THE STRUGGLE

- In 1698, Fort Jesus fell in the hands of the OmanArabs after chasing away the Portuguese.
- In 1728, the Portuguese attempted to recapture Mombasa, but they were evicted with the help of the OmanArabs.
- In 1739, the Oman Yoruba ruler (sultan saif ibn, sultan) chose Mohammed bin 'Uthman al-Mazrui as the governor of Mombasa.
- In 1741, sultan bin saif ibn sultan fell prey to the Persian soldiers who shot him dead.
- In the same year, the Yoruba dynasty was overthrown and replaced by the busaidi family under Ahmed bin busaidi.
- However, the governor of Mombasa refused to recognize the new ruler of Oman Ahmed bin al-busaidi.
- In 1741, the disloyal governor of Mombasa (Mohammed bin ythman al-Mazrui) was murdered and replaced by the agents of the sultan Oman.
- In 1742, the dead governor's brother Ali bin 'Uthman recaptured Mombasa.
- The Mazrui gradually extended their control over the coastal towns including Pemba Island.

- In 1753, the Mazrui attempted to control Zanzibar but were defeated hence Zanzibar remained loyal to Oman.
- In 1771, Kilwa forced the Oman representative to leave.
- In 1793, the Sultan's forces captured Kilwa and the royal governor appointed.
- In 1806, the Mazrui governors challenged Oman once more and established control over the whole coast from Malindi to Pangani.
- In 1806, Said bin Sultan came to the throne of Oman. He was determined to control the east African coast.
- In 1807, the Mazrui captured Pemba but failed to conquer Lamu.
- In 1814, the Mazrui appealed to the British for aid but by the time they did the British had already started helping his rival Seyyid Said, the new Oman ruler.
- In 1817, Seyyid Said captured Pemba and ordered all her subjects not to trade with Mombasa.
- He also ordered Zanzibar to liberate Pemba and Brava from Mazrui rule.
- In 1822, Seyyid Said captured Brava and Pemba from the Mazrui.
- In 1824, a British officer Captain Owen declared British protectorate over Mombasa.
- In 1826, the Owen protectorate was not recognized by the British government.
- In 1827, Seyyid Said attacked Mombasa and almost brought the Mazrui self-rule to the end.
- In 1829, Seyyid Said attacked Mombasa again but was driven off by the Mazrui.
- In 1837, Seyyid Said tricked some members of the Mazrui family into entering Fort Jesus. His troops captured them and they were all murdered.
- He tricked others and took them to the Persian Gulf where he starved them to death.
- This marked the end of the long time conflict between the Mazrui and the Busaidi family.
- In 1840, Seyyid Said transferred his capital to Zanzibar and the whole east African coast was ruled by one man from the Busaidi family.

Qn. Describe the course of the Mazrui –Busaidi conflict at the east African coast

FACTORS FOR THE COLLAPSE OF THE MAZRUI.

- Firstly, the Mazrui were militarily weak.
- The Mazrui depended on the Portuguese that had already been defeated at the coast.
- The Mazrui lacked capable rulers to fight against the Busaidi.

- ‘the Mazrui were economically poor and weak farmers.
- The Oman arabas were more determined to defeat the Mazrui.
- The rise of seyyid said, a good military busaidi ruler led to the defeat of Mazrui.
- The busaidi allied with the British to defeat the Mazrui.
- The strength of the Oman empire led to the defeat of the Mazrui.
- The Mazrui were internally disunited and this led to their defeat.
- The Mazrui were proud and arrogant and this cost them the support of the coastal people.
- The Mazrui’s failure to secure the support of Britain led to their defeat.
- The pate rebellion finally weakened Mazrui influence.
- The busaidi rulers were harsh and this scares off the would be prominent Mazrui rulers.
- The role played by Khalid (seyyid said) in silencing and defeating Mombasa.
- SEYYID SAID AT THE EAST AFRICAN COAST.
- Seyyid bin sultan al-said was born in 1791, in Muscat to sultan bin ahmed, who ruled Oman from 1792 to 1804.
- In 1804, sultan bin ahmed his father died in a navy battle while on an expedition to Basra.
- His death created political confusion in Oman and this was later settled when seyyid bin said killed his uncle badr bin saif who had taken over power.
- He was then proclaimed the absolute ruler of Oman in 1806 at the age of 15 years.
- As a ruler of Oman, seyyid said faced several problems which included the sea pirates, the Mazrui struggles and the family problems.
- In abid to solve those problems, seyyid said decided to transfer his capital from Muscat from Zanzibar to in 1840

WHY SEYYID SAID TRANSFERRED HS CAPITAL FROM OMAN TO ZANZIBAR

- He had a desire to build wealth for himself. He was once said he was nothing but merchant.
- He hoped to get slaves to work on his clove plantations.
- He wanted to introduce the growing of cloves in Zanzibar.
- Zanzibar had fertile soils suitable for the growing of cloves.
- East Africa had plenty of natural resources like ivory, gold, slaves than Oman.
- He was attracted by the deep and natural harbourers at the coast,

- He was running away from the political problems at home after the killing of his cousin.
- The strategic location of Zanzibar as a marketcenter attracted him.
- Zanzibar also had better climatic conditions than Oman.
- Zanzibar also had fresh water sweet for drinking.
- He had a desire to gain prestige and popularity a ruler of two empires Oman and Zanzibar.
- Zanzibar was more loyal to his rule than Oman.
- He wanted to end the Mazrui-busaidi dynasty conflicts.
- He wanted to effectively control his east AFRICAN DOMINION.
- He wanted to check on the activities of the sea pirates who made trade across the Indian ocean almost impossible.
- He was attracted by the hospitality of the coastal towns like Malindi and Pemba.
- Zanzibar also had security advantage because it was an island.
- He wanted to escape from the religious persecution in the roman by that time.
- Zanzibars central trade was ideal for the control of the inland trade.
- He wanted to control the east African trade in slaves and ivory which was already developed.

Qn. Why did seyyid said transfer his capital from Muscat to Zanzibar

HOW SEYYID SAID SETTLED MAZRUI-BUSAIDI-CONFLICTS

- Seyyid said was born in 1791 in Muscat.
- He was a prince of the busaidi ruling family, and came to power in 1806.
- During his early years in power, he faces many problems among which were the Mazrui-busaidi conflicts which he tried to solve in the following ways;
- In 1822, the Moresby treaty was signed to stop the sending of slaves outside Oman and east Africa.
- British navy was allowed to search for all suspected Arab dhows.
- In 1824, a force was sent to wipe out the Mazrui but they the British flag at Mombasa.
- In 1827, seyyid said led another force and forced the Mazrui to submit.
- After seyyid said's withdraw, trouble broke out and in 1829, he returned and failed.
- In 1837, seyyid said invited the leading Mazrui and arrested them.
- The rebels were sent to exile and others were drowned in the Indian ocean.

- In 1840, Seyyid Said transferred his capital from Muscat to Zanzibar.
- Seyyid Said made an alliance with the British to strengthen his military position so as to control East Africa and Oman.
- Seyyid Said used his power and tactics to capture Fort Jesus, arrest and deport the remaining Mazrui.

Qn. How did Seyyid Said settle the Busaidi – Mazrui conflicts at the East African coast

RESULTS OF SEYYID SAID'S SETTLEMENT AT THE COAST

- The effects of Seyyid Said's settlements at the coast were political, social, and economic.
- **ECONOMICALLY**, he built the economy through establishing large clove and coconut plantations.
- He also encouraged his subjects to grow cloves in Zanzibar.
- He made Zanzibar the world's leading producer of cloves.
- Africans in Zanzibar lost fertile lands to the Arabs for the clove farms.
- He used slave labour to work on his clove plantations.
- In his way, he encouraged slave trade at the coast, leading to depopulation.
- He transformed Zanzibar into a strategic market.
- He made Zanzibar an international port, handling both imports and exports.
- Zanzibar became the principal market on the East African coast.
- He signed commercial treaties with European countries like the USA in 1883, Britain in 1839, and France in 184.
- He also signed treaties with interior chiefs like Fundi Kira and Mirambo.
- He fought sea pirates, making the Indian Ocean secure.
- The presence of increased trading activities at the East African coast.
- He collected customs duties that enriched Zanzibar's economy.
- He organized personal trade caravans into the interior of East Africa.
- He introduced a monetary system of trade, for example, the use of copper currency in East Africa.
- He also encouraged the use of Indian currency (rupees) instead of barter trade.
- He invited Indian banyans to work in his treasury.

- He employed them as his commercial advisors and tax collectors.
- He introduced a system of taxing all the imports and exports as a way of raising revenue.
- The banyans also financed trade caravans into the interior of east Africa.
- He displaced Africans in order to give land to his clove farms.
- He attracted foreigners like the British and the French to Zanzibar hence increased trade.
- He created market center among African chiefdoms.
- He ended the Mazrui-busaidi conflicts hence created peace that attracted more traders.
- He encouraged Arabs and Swahili penetration into the interior of east Africa.

POLITICALLY, Seyyid Said ushered in a period of peace at the east African coast.

- He also played a big role in uniting the coastal towns.
- He gave security to the coastal towns through creating a strong army.

SOCIALLY, he opened up koranic schools as centers of learning in Zanzibar.

- He also encouraged the spread of the Arabic and Swahili cultures and languages.
- He encouraged the spread of Islam at the east African coast.
- He also built mosques as places of worship.
- He encouraged Arabic styles of building flat topped houses.
- He happened to end slave trade in the Hamerton treaty of 1845.
- Unfortunately, Seyyid Said died in 1856.

Qn. What were the effects of Seyyid Said's rule on the peoples of east Africa

CHAPTER 5: THE PEOPLING OF EAST AFRICA

- From AD 1000, east Africa received many groups of people each group coming from different directions.
- The influence of new invaders was spearheaded by the Cushites from the north especially Ethiopia.
- They are recorded as the earliest immigrants in east Africa.
- They were followed by the Bantu from the Niger-Congo basin and Nilotic from the north.
- The Ngoni from south Africa formed the last group of Bantu.
- All the migrations took many years outside and within east Africa before they settled permanently in their present settlements.

THE BANTU MIGRATION

Qn. Who were the bantu

- Bantu is a linguistics word describing a group of people who speak a closely related language with a suffix 'NTU'.
- They belonged to the negroid family or the black race.
- They are some of the earliest inhabitants of east Africa.
- Their origins are not clear or still debatable to the historians.
- However, they are believed to have originated from the areas of west Africa around the Congo-Niger basin or the Cameroon highlands.
- They moved to Congo (Katanga province) which became their dispersal point.
- They left Katanga over 2000 years ago.
- The bantu was basically all through, they also kept some live stock.
- They also made some iron tools which they used for cultivation.
- The bantu is the largest group of people in east Africa making up to 70% of the total population.
- In east Africa they include, inter-lacustrine bantu, eastern/highland/coastal bantu, central Tanzanian bantu and southern Tanzanian bantu.
- Other groups of bantu went to central and southern Africa.

REASONS FOR BANTU MIGRATION TO EAST AFRICA

- Reasons for their migration are not clear to historians, but the following reasons have been suggested;
- Probably, increased population in their cradle land might have caused shortage of land for settling forcing them to look for new areas.
- Such as areas with fertile soils since the soils in their home-land had become exhausted.
- Natural calamities like drought and famine caused shortage of water and hunger forcing them to migrate.
- Out-break of human diseases like malaria, sleeping sickness, smallpox etc. might have claimed lives of their relatives and friends forcing the survivors to look for disease free areas.
- Over cultivation also forced the bantu to move to fresh areas.

- Internal conflicts like family quarrels, succession disputes, civil wars etc. might have caused their migration into east Africa.
- External attacks from their external neighbors like the Nilotic and the pygmies might have forced them to migrate to peaceful areas.
- Love for adventure which is the need to discover more beyond one's home land might have forced them to migrate.
- Development of new skills like iron working might have inspired some of them to migrate.
- Floods might have destroyed their crops and property forcing them to migrate.
- Poor leadership in their homeland might have forced them to migrate.
- Band wagon effects /peer influence might have forced some to migrate since they saw their friends and families moving.

Qn. Why did the Bantu leave their cradle land?

MOVEMENT AND SETTLEMENT OF THE BANTU INTO EAST AFRICA(COURSE)

- The bantu is a linguistic group of people who speak a similar language with a common suffix NTU.
- They belong to the nereidrace (the black race).
- Their origins are not clearly known to historians.
- Probably, they came from west Africa around the congo-niger basin /from the Cameroon highlands.
- Their migration is believed to have started over 2000 years ago.
- Their migration was not a single solid movement but they entered east Africa in groups of families/friends and did not settle in one place.
- Their movement was slow and gradual and therefore it took a long period of time.
- Their contacts were either hostile or peaceful depending on the people they met.
- From west Africa, they moved south wards and by ad 1000 they had settled at Katanga province in Congo.
- This became their first dispersal point from where they moved to different directions.
- They entered east Africa in four different groups including the western and eastern bantu, the central and southern Tanzanian bantu.

- The first group to enter east Africa was that of the western bantu /inter-lacustrine bantu.
- They entered east Africa between lake albert in the north and lake Edward in the south.
- They settled around the lake regions of east Africa (lake George,Edward,albert and Victoria) hence the name interlucustrine bantu.
- Their migration is believed to have taken place between 1000 and 1300 ad.
- The bantu in this group were basically agriculturalists and also carried out some bit of pastoralism.
- They include the Buganda, Busoga,banyoro, baking,batoro, Burundi etc.
- Other bantu in this group moved to western Kenya and gave birth to the luyia and samia.
- The Chwezi later took control over their area and ruled them and other related people.
- The 2nd major group moved between south of Lake Victoria and north of Lake Tanganyika.
- They settled on the central Tanganyika plateau.
- They included the sukuma, Nyamwezi, gogo, bena, ziza ha etc.
- Their migration is believed to have taken between 1300 ad.
- They were initially farmers. but with time some changed from farmers to pastoral life.
- Some crossed the Tanganyika plateau and reached taita hills around 1300 ad.
- The chagga,pokomo,giryama,segeju and nyika moved north wards along the coast to shungwaya.
- Shungwaya became their 2nd dispersal point due to pressure from the galla.
- The nyika group moved south wards along the coast and they came to be known as the coastal and highland bantu.
- The akamba, chukka, kikuyu and embu moved to Kenya highland and they came to be known as the highland Banta.
- Population pressure among the highland Bantu further caused expansion.
- However, the migration was curtailed by masai and akamb a.
- The coastal and highland Bantu also referred to as the eastern Bantu.
- The southern Bantu was the fourth group and they entered between Lake Malawi and Tanganyika and settled in presence day southern Tanzania.
- They are believed to have come from central Africa.
- Their migration is believed to have taken place between 1000-1300 AD.
- They include the hehe, sangu, yao, meru etc.

- They had at 1st settled at the coast where they had mixed with the khoi-san.
- Lastly, in 1840s, the ngoni entered east Africa from southAfrica.

Qn. Describe the migration and settlement of the Bantu into East Africa before 1300 AD.

MAP

MOVEMENT AND SETTLEMENT OF THE WESTERN BANTU

- They are a branch of the Bantu speaking people who settled in East Africa.
- They were also called the inter-lacustrine Bantu.
- Their originals are still unclear to most historians.
- Probably, they came from Niger to Congo basin West Africa.
- This was probably about 2000 years ago.
- Information about their migration is obtained from linguistic and oral studies.
- Their migration was gradual and seasonal since it spread over a long period of time.
- They entered east Africa between Albert and Edward between 1000-1400 AD.
- They settled around lake regions of east Africa like Edward, Kyoga, Victoria etc.
- They moved in groups of clans, tribes or families.
- Their contacts were either peaceful or hostile.
- Those who settled in the east and south of Albert include the banyoro.
- Those who settled west of Lake Victoria include Buganda and banyankole.
- Those who settled north of Lake Victoria were the Busoga.
- Others moved to eastern Uganda like the Busoga, samia and the banyole.
- Some moved east wards along the northern shores of Lake Victoria into western Kenya.
- These gave birth to the gishu and luyia who settled around mumias area.
- Some moved from western Uganda to north western Tanzania and settled at bukoba and they include the bahinda.

Qn. Describe the migration and settlement of the western Bantu into East Africa

MOVEMENT AND SETTLEMENT OF THE EASTERN /COASTAL /HIGHLAND BANTU

- They were part of the Bantu speaking people of east Africa.
- Their origin and migration are not clear to the historians.
- Probably, they came from south Congo/west Africa.
- Information about their history is obtained from the linguistic or oral studies.
- Their migration was gradual and seasonal since it was spread over a long time.
- They entered east Africa in groups of families /clans.
- They are believed to have entered east Africa between l. Victoria and l. Tanganyika in the south.
- They are believed to have entered with the 1st millennium ad 1000.
- They crossed the dry Tanganyika plateau between 1000 and 1300 ad.
- This resulted into east ward movement up to taita hills.
- Taita became their 1st dispersal point.
- The chagga, pale, taita, shaamba nduruma settled around taita and Kilimanjaro hills hence came to be =known as the central Tanzanian bantu.
- The pokomo, giriyama, seguju, and nyika moved north wards along the coast at shungwaya.
- Shungwya became their 2nd point of dispersal due to the pressure from the galla.
- The nyika, seguju, makalanga and zimad moved south wards along the coast.
- These came to be known as the coastal bantu.
- The Kamba, kikuyu, chukka and embu moved to Kenyan highlands.
- They came to be known as the highland Bantu.
- Population pressure among them caused furtherexpansion.
- Their migration was however curtailed by the Maasai and Kamba.
- The eastern Bantu migration continued up to 1850s.
- Some groups remained close to the coast while others mixed with other groups like the coastal Arabs forming a strong Swahili culture.
- The coastal and highland bantu are also referred to as the eastern bantu

Qn.1, Describe the migration and settlement of the eastern Bantu into East Africa.

Qn2. Describe the movement end settlement of the coastal and highland bantu.

- **EFFECTS OF BANTU MIGRATION.**

- The bantu migration into east had both positive and negative effects.

- **POSITIVE EFFECTS.**

- They led to the peopling of eastAfrica since they formed about 75% of east Africa's population.
- They introduced Bantu tribes like Buganda, bagishu, Busoga, bator etc.
- They introduced Bantu languages like Luganda, Lusaga etc.
- They introduced iron working and the use of iron tools likepanga, hoes etc.
- They introduced new food crops like banana, Yams, beans etc which improved their] diet.
- The local people they met adopted a settled way of life from the Bantu.
- They introduced new farming methods like shifting cultivation, mulching, irrigation and zero grazing.
- They intermarried with the local people leading to the birth of new tribe e like the Buganda, Busoga luyia etc.
- They introduce centralized system of administration in the areas they settled.
- They led to the development of trade in east Africa like barter and slave trade.
- They introduced the bantu traditional religion in the areas where they settled.

NEGATIVE EFFECTS

- They absorbed most of the non-bantu they met making them to lose their identity.
- Those who refused to be displaced or killed.
- Some of the bantu abandoned their culture and copied those of the people they met making them to lose their identity.
- They led to increased insecurity in these areas resulting into loss of lives.
- There was massive destruction of property and villages due to the raids and the counter raids.
- They introduced new fighting tactics like cow horned method introduced by the ngoni.
- New fighting weapons like the short stabbing spear (assegai)and the large cow hide shields were introduced by the ngoni.
- The ngoni invasion of southern tanyika led to increase in slave trade since they disorganized the settled societies making it easy to capture slaves.

Qn. What were the effects of the Bantu migration in east Africa

THE LUO-MIGRATION

Qn. Who were the Luo

- The Luo were a linguistic group of people called river lake Nilotic.
- Original, they lived around the Ethiopian highlands before moving to the bar-el-gazel in south eastern Sudan which became their cradle land.
- The Luo are also called the jonam, meaning the people of the river-lake.
- The Luo arrived in east Africa in the 15th century.
- They were the ancestors of the langi, acholi, japadhola, kumam and the kenya-luo.
- They speak related language and are mostly dark skinned.
- They were basically fishermen, pastoralists and also carried out some small scale farming.
- They lived in isolated communities along the bank of river Nile.
- They are part of the Nilotic who areas closely related to the nuer, dinka, shilluk in Sudan.

REASONS WHY THE LUO MIGRATED FROM THEIR HOME-LAND

- The Luo(jonam) are group of people under the river-lake Nilotic.
- They moved from their cradle land in the south-eastern Sudan around the 15th century.
- The reasons for their migrations are not clearly known but the following have been suggested.
- Probably, population increase in their homeland might have caused shortage of land for settlement forcing them to look for fresh areas.
- The need for fertile soils for growing crops might have forced them to migrate since the soils in their home lands had become exhausted.
- The need for pasture and water to feed their animals might have forced them to migrate.
- Internal conflicts like family quarrels, land disputes and succession disputes might have forced them to migrate to peaceful areas.
- External attacks from hostile neighbors like the shilluk and nuer might have forced them to migrate to peaceful places.
- Natural calamities like floods might have destroyed their crops and property forcing them to migrate.

- Drought and famine might have caused shortage of water and food leading to their migration.
- Human diseases like sleeping sickness, malaria, small pox etc. might have claimed many of their relatives forcing the survivors to migrate.
- Animal disease like nagana and rinder pest might have killed many of their animals forcing them to look for disease-free areas.
- Love for adventure which is the desire to discover un known lands might have forced the Luo to migrate.
- Group influence/peer pressure or band wagon effect might have forced them to migrate since they saw their relatives and friends migrating.
- The desire to export their culture and political influence might have forced them to migrate.

Qn. Why did the Luo live their home land?

MOVEMENT AND SETTLEMENT OF THE LUO

- The Luo was major group of the river lake Nilotic who settled around lakes and rivers.
- They originally settled around the shores of lake Rudolf and later moved to bar-el-gazel in the equatorial province.
- By 1400, they had started their journey from bar-el –gazel and the equatorial province.
- Their movement was slow and gradual since it spread over a long period between 1000 and 1800 ad.
- They moved in small groups of families or clans.
- At times their movement was seasonal and gradual.
- They moved south wards following the Nile under their leader olumu.
- They entered east Africa through northern Uganda and settled at pubungu (pakwach).
- This later became their dispersal point from where they spread to different directions.
- On reaching pubungu olumu had three sons, Gipiir (nyipir) tifoole and labongo.
- Following olum's death, his sons led different groups to different directions.
- One group under Gipiir and tifoole moved west wards and mixed with Sudanic okebo, lendu and madi giving rise to the alur people.
- Other group under labongo moved south wards into pawir (chope) at a time when bunyoro kitale was disintegrating.

- They set up the biito dynasty and other sub-dynasties in Busoga and bukeddi.
- Other group from pubungu moved east wards, intermarried with the local mati and formed the Acholi.
- Others moved to modernlango, meet with the ateker and formed the lango –Luo.
- The other group led by adhola moved from pubungu through kaberaimaido, bugishu and settled in budaama forming the japadhola.
- Other group from bunyoro left and set up sub-dynasties in Buganda, bukeddi, Busoga and kiziba.
- These were victims of the maasai and banyole raiders.
- The Luo who moved to Kenya included the joka-jok, joka-owiny, joka-amolo and abasuba.
- The joke –joke moved east wards from pubungu through Acholi and kaberaimaido and some settle them.
- Others continued to lamogi hills in western Kenya.
- The joke-owiny moved from pubungu and finally settled in sigoma-alego in the nyanza region in westernKenya.
- They were led by the fearless owiny singoma.
- The joke-omolo moved north wards from bunyoro through budaama, Busoga and also settled in the nyanza province.
- The abasuba who were a group of refugees from ssese island, Buganda, Busoga and bugwerere also moved and settled in nyanza province.
- The group that finally settled in the kivirondo gulf and nyanza region became known as the Kenyan Luo (the jao-luo).

Qn. Describe the movement and settlement of the Luo in 1850

THE MAP

EFFECTS OF THE LUO MIGRATION IN EAST AFRICA

Effects of the Luo migration in east Africa were both positive and negative.

POSITIVE EFFECTS

- The migration led to increase in population in east Africa.

- There were intermarriages between the Luo and the local people leading to the birth of new tribes like alur, langi, japadhola, Acholi and chope etc.
- The new tribes came with new languages like alur, ajapadhola, langi, kumam and Acholi.
- They established themselves as chiefs over the local people.
- For example, by ad 1700, small Luo dominated and centralized states had emerged in Acholi land.
- They traded with the new communities they met exchanging grains for iron tools and weapons.
- Their coming resulted into loss of cultures and languages by the local people.
- For example, in lango some of the langi gave up their ateker language for Luo language.
- The abasuba also eventually took up the Luo language and customs.
- They (abasuba), also copied some aspects of the Luo initiation rites like removing the 6th bottom teeth.
- Still some bantu speaking groups at ayego were defeated and some were absorbed in the linguistic group.
- However, in some areas, the Luo lost their language and culture like in bunyoro where they were completely 'ntunised'.
- They led to the decline of the Chwezi empire of bunyoro-kitala.
- As a result, small independent states emerged like bunyoro, Busoga, karagwe, Buganda, ankole etc.
- They established the biito dynasty which lasted for 4-5 centuries up to 1967 when obote abolished kingdoms in Uganda.
- The Luo sub-dynasty also ruled over a large area in Busoga, karagwe, and western Kenya.
- They introduced the idea of chiefdom (rwothdom) in the areas where they settled.
- They introduced the idea of cattlekeeping (short horned hampless zebu cattle).
- The cattle culture spread almost to everywhere they settled especially in Acholi land.
- They introduce peti names (empako) for example akiiki, abwooli, amooti, atenyi.
- They initiated the system of granting land to clans.
- They introduced the system of royal burial sites for abakama (kings) after removing their jaw bone.

- In bunyoro, they introduced regalia like the royal drums, shields, royal fire etc.
- They introduced new types of crops like sim-sim, millet etc.

NEGATIVE EFFECTS

- There was heavy displacement of for example in bunyoro and lango.
- Some of the displaced people of bunyoro especially the bahima had to migrate.
- They also drove away some of the bantu group to the samia.
- Their arrival led to population increase in the areas where they settled.
- This resulted into land disputes with the people they found.
- during their movement, they led to inter-clan wars.
- There was increased warfare and insecurity in the region.
- This led to the loss of lives and hence depopulation in the areas where they settled.
- A lot of property including huts and villages were destroyed.
- The wars led to the destruction of crops resulting into famine.

Qn. What were the effects of the Luo settlement on the peoples of eastAfrica.

THE PLAIN NILOTICS

- The plain Nilotic are group of nilotes who settled on the plains of east Africa.
- They are believed to have come from the lake turkan (lake Rudolf) area of Kenya and Ethiopia.
- In eastAfrica they were divided in different communities including the masaa, jie, iteso, turkana and the karamoja peoples.

REASONS FOR THEIR MIGRATION

The reasons for their migration are not clearly known but the following have been suggested.

- Probably, population increase in their homeland might have caused shortage of land for settlement forcing them to move to look for fresh areas.
- The need for fertile soils for growing crops might have forced them to migrate since the soils in the homelands had become exhausted.

- The need for pasture and water to feed their animals might have forced them to migrate.
- Internal conflicts like family quarrels, land disputes and succession disputes might have forced them to migrate to peaceful areas.
- External attacks from the hostile neighbors like shilluk and nuer might have forced them to migrate to peaceful areas.
- Natural calamities like flood might have destroyed their crops and property forcing them to migrate.
- Drought and famine might have caused shortage of water and food leading to their migration.
- Human diseases like sleeping sickness, malaria etc. might have claimed many of their relatives forcing the survivors to migrate.
- Animal disease like nagana and linder pest might have killed many of their animals forcing them to look for disease-free areas.
- Love for adventure which is the desire to discover unknown lands might have forced them to migrate.
- Group influence /peer pressure /band wagon effect might have forced them to migrate since they saw their friends and relatives migrating.
- Finally, the Luo might have had the desire to expose their political and culture influence to other areas.

Qn. Why did the plain Nilotes leave their home

MOVEMENT AND SETTLEMENT OF THE PLAIN NILOTICS

These were a group of nilotes who settled on the plains of east Africa.

- This group include tribes like the massaai, karamojats etc.
- This movement is not clearly known to the historians
- Most likely they came from the northeast, probably, the southern slopes of the Ethiopian highlands.
- From Ethiopia, they moved south wards and by ad 1000, they had reached and settled in the lake of Rudolf in Kenya.
- Lake Rudolf became their disposal point from where they spread into various directions.
- this was because of the epidemic diseases like nagana, liver blindness tsetse flies.

- They got divided into two major groups, the teso-masai and bari-speakers.
- The bari-speakers moved into the Sudan while the teso-masai spread into east Africa.
- The teso-masai split into 3 small groups like the masai, teso-karamoja lotuko.
- The lotuko moved and finally settled in Sudan.
- The massai moved south wards and settled in between MTKenya, Kilimanjaro ND TAHITI HILLS. Fromhere, the massai expanded south wards along the rift valley search for water and water.
- The iteso and karamoja first settled on MT moroto before the major dispersal during the 17-18th century.
- Due to the increase in population, the itesots moved further southwards into eastern Uganda and western Kenya.
- In Uganda, the itesots settled in present soroti, mbale, kaberaido and kumi.
- The karamoja first moved south-west wards from MT moroto and moved west wards settling into the present day south and central karamoja.
- The dodoth and jie moved north-wards settling in the modern kotido.
- The turkana 1st moved north-east wards into present day northern Kenya.
- But later turned south near lake turkana due to pressure from the Samburu.

Qn. Describe the migration and settlement of the plain Nilotes into east Africa.

THE MAP

EFFECTS OF THE PLAIN NILOTES ON THE PEOPLES OF EAST AFRICA

- Their coming led to increase in wars and raids in east Africa.
- As a result of the wars, there was loss of lives and destruction of property.
- They displaced people from their lands like the kikuyu, kipsigis.
- They established military control over some societies in east Africa like the massai took over chagga.
- They led to increase in the population of east Africa.
- Masai conquered the Kalenjin and absorbed their culture.
- They took over control of other societies like the Kalenjin.
- There were intermarriages resulting into the birth of new tribes like iteso intermarried with the Luo forming the kumam.

- The intermarriages between the ateker and the Luo resulted into the langi.
- They introduced the cattle keeping cultures which was adopted by many societies like the Kamba and kikuyu.
- They introduced short horned cows in east Africa.
- They copied cultivation from the Bantu like the Maasai who became mixed farmers.
- They traded with their neighbors like the itesots battered cereals with the banyoro.
- The Kalenjin traded in iron articles for skin, cattle, butter from the Maasai.
- Their idea of iron working was copied by the Cushite's.
- They introduced new languages like ateso, karamajong etc.
- New cultures and royal regalia like the Karamojong stool was introduced.

Qn. What were the effects of the plain Nilotes on the peoples of east Africa

THE NGONI INVASION OF EAST AFRICA.

ORIGINS;

- The ngoni are part of the Nguni-bantu speaking people of south Africa.
- They originally lived in southern Africa in natal province.
- They were the last of bantu to enter east Africa.
- They left south Africa in the 1820s and reached east Africa in the 1840s.
- Their migration was sparked off by shaka Zulus expansionist wars.
- This was the mfecane of dificane era, time of trouble in southern Africa.
- The ngoni spoke a language called Nguni.
- They were close relatives of thendwandwe.
- They were farmers, fishermen and practiced abit of pastoralism.
- They were a worrier society that lived on looting, plundering and terrorizing their neighbors.
- They had acentralised system of administration with a king as their political head.
- They moved north wards through central Africa and finally settled in the central and southern Tanganyika.
- During their movement, they absorbed many people on their way for example the cewa, shona, songa etc.
- They were led by their good leaders like zwangendaba, Maputo and zulugama.

- By the time they reached east Africa(Tanganyika)around 1840s, their number had grown.
- Qn. Who were the Ngoni**

REASONS FORV NGONI MIGRATION INTO EAST AFRICA

- The ngoni are part of the Nguni speaking people who lived in the southeastern Africa around natal province.
- Their migration was sparked off by shakas expansionist wars in the 1820s.
- He created a period of war(mfecane)which forced many people to migrate.
- Civil wars in Zulu land led to misery and suffering forcing the ngoni to migrate.
- Increased population in Zulu land created great demand for new areas for settlement forcing the ngoni to migrate.
- Internal conflicts over land, succession disputes and family quarrels might have forced them to migrate,
- The search for fertile areas for agriculture might have caused their migration since they were farmers.
- The influence of good and ambitious leaders like zwangendaba, Maputo and zulugama who wanted to establish independent states might have forced some to migrate.
- Epidermis diseases like small pox, malariaand sleeping sickness might have claimed many lives of their relatives forcing them to migrate.
- Animal diseases like nagana might have claimed their animals forcing them to look for disease free areas.
- The search for water and pasture for their animals might have forced them to migrate since they were pastoralists.
- Over stocking in their cradle land created shortage of grazing land forcing the ngoni to migrate to other areas.
- Outbreak of drought and famine caused shortage of water AND FOOD FORCING THE noni to migrate.
- The hostile climate (extreme winter) in natal might have forced them to move to look for friendly environment elsewhere.
- The desire to export their working skills to other areas might have forced them to migrate.

- Since the noni were naturally hostile and raider, they wanted to loot and increase on their herds.
- The love foe adventure might have forced them to discover what was taking place in other parts of the world.
- The Boer invasion of the interior(natal)caused shortage of land for settlement making them to migrate.
- Others were escaping shakas ruthless military training in south Africa.

Qn. Why did the Ngoni leave their cradle land

MOVEMENT AND SETTLEMENT OF THE NGONI INTO EAST AFRICA

- The noni migration started from south eastern Africa among the bantu speaking people.
- It was sparked off by shakas expansionist policy (mfecane era).
- There were several waves of migration from south Africa but only two groups of people came to east Africa.
- The 1st largest group was led by nduna zangwendaba.
- They moved north wards through central Africa destroying the shona and cewa settlements in 1831.
- On 19th November 1835, they crossed riverZambezi and continued moving north wards.
- They travelled through Malawi and finally settled around ufipa plateau in south western Tanganyika in 1840.
- This was after destroying the small and disorganized ufipa communities.
- They settled around ufipa because the soils were fertile and the people easy to conquer.
- In 1858, zwangendaba died and there arose of power struggle. his group split into 5 smaller groups.
- Three of them moved south wards settling in the present day Malawi and Zambia.
- Two of the groups remained in east Africa, the tuta noni and the gwangara noni.
- The tuta noni moved north wards into the land of holoholo but they were driven out forcing them to settle in north eastern Tanzania.
- From here, they frequently raided the central trade route and the Nyamwezi.
- This group also captured the young Mirambo at a place called bugomba.

- From ufipa, the gwangara moved east wards under the leader ship of zulugama destroying the heheand sangu settlements.
- The 2nd and small group was the maseko noni led by Maputo.
- This group entered eastz through central Africa.
- They travelled up to the eastern side of lake nyasa(Malawi)until they reached songea.
- They settled at songea and absorbed the yao whom they found there.
- In 1860, the gwangara settled in songea after driving away the maseko noni.
- Maputo led his group back across river Ruvuma and they finally settled in south west Malawi.
- Another group of the maseko moved to morongoro where they came to be known as the mbuga noni.
- Other groups of the noni scattered to tunduru, maasai and newale.

Qn. Describe the migration of the Ngoni into east Africa

THE MAP

WHY THE NGONI WERE SUCCESSFUL IN CONQUERING SOUTHERN TANGANYIKA.

- The noni captured young men and women and absorbed them into the noni worrier forces which boosted their number.
- They had superior military organization which they had copied from shaka.
- They also had a well –trained army which was divided into small units called ‘impis’.
- The nonihad superior tactics of attacking their enemies like the cow-horn formation which was highly effective.
- They also preferred fighting in open and barefooted which increased their mobility.
- They used surprise attacks whereby they caught their enemies un prepared.
- The noni had superior weapons to those of their enemiesfor example they had the short stabbing spears and a large cow hide shield for protection.
- The societies the noni met were weak and disorganized and therefore could not match the military might of the noni.
- They met societies which were disunited and often at war with each other.

- The long period of war during their journey from south Africa gave them military discipline and strong endurance in the battle fields.
- The noni had great experience in large scale warfare since their main occupation for many years had been warfare.
- The noni had strong leaders like zwangendaba, zulugama and Maputo who motivated their people by promising them land and cattle.
- They used the scorched earth policy which involved burning villages and granaries so that their enemies would not have food.
- The noni was not affected by famine since they looted food where they passed.
- They were loyal and united under their leaders and commanders which kept them focused.
- Finally, the east African communities had also been weakened by slave trade and long distance trade.

Qn. Why were the Ngoni successful in defeating the east Africans

EFFECTS OF THE NGONI MIGRATION IN EAST AFRICA.

- The noni invasion created a period of war in the areas that had been largely peaceful like ufipa, songea and unyamwezi.
- The war led to massive loss of lives in southern Tanganyika.
- As a result, some areas were depopulated and desolate.
- Their invasion created an atmosphere of insecurity, chaos and anarchy in southern Tanganyika.
- There was massive destruction of property for example villages were burnt and crops were destroyed which affected the population.
- Agriculture was disrupted leading to famine in many societies.
- The ruga-ruga mercenaries used the noni military tactics and hired themselves out to different chiefs.
- The local people adopted the noni fighting tactics like the assegai cowhide shield, sandals etc.
- Their weaponry and tactics were later used against them like the holohol and the fipa used noni type of weapon to defeat them in 1850s.

- Various leaders became famous for using noni tactics for example chief merere of sangu used the noni tactics to expand the areas he ruled in 1860s and 70s.
- Powerful leaders like Mirambo and nyungu yam awe of the Nyamwezi and the munyigumba of the hehe used the noni tactics to build their states.
- Slave trade increased in southern Tanganyika as many communities were left weak and defenseless.
- It led to the emergency of military or armed groups of bandits like the maviti and ruga-ruga mercenaries who terrorized societies in southern Tanganyika.
- The ruga-ruga mercenaries used the noni military tactics and hired themselves out to different chiefs.
- They led to creation of large political units under strong leadership like Mirambo empire.

Qn. What were the effects of the noni migration and settlement in east Africa

CHAPTER 6:THE EARLY INTERLUCUSTRINE KINGDOMS

- The interlucustrine region refers to the area between the great lakes of east African.
- Before ad 1000, this area was occupied by people who were non-bantu.
- According to all traditional, this area was occupied by the tembuzi and later the bachwezi.
- The interlucustrine region include; bunyoro, Buganda, toro, ankole, karagwe Rwanda and Burundi.
- Powerful kingdoms were later formed in this region because of the increased population like Buganda, bunyoro, ankole, torop etc.

MAP.

THE TEMBUZI;

ORIGINS.

- The Tembuzi are believed to have been the 1st inhabitants of the interlucustrine region.
- Their origins are not clear and therefore still remain mythically to the present day historians.

- However, traditions say that they fell from heaven and therefore were demi-gods having had miraculous powers.
- They could not die but disappeared and went back to heaven after their earthly life.
- They were the founders of bunyoro-kitara kingdom.
- The tembuzi were also called the abakama-meaning rulers.
- Their 1st ruler was called ruhanga (the creator god).
- Ruhanga was assisted by his brother in governing bunyoro kitara.
- Nkya had four sons, kakama-twale, kairu, kahima and kantu.
- Kakama was the ancestor of rulers, kairu was the ancestor of cultivators and kahima the ancestor of herdsmen.
- Ruhanga and kantu went back to heaven and left kakama to rule the earth.
- Legends say that kakama disappeared and was succeeded by Baba.
- During this time, the death occurred, when baba died, he was succeeded by mukonko.
- Mukonko was succeeded by ngozaki. ngozaki was succeeded by isaza who is said to have divided the kingdom into small administrative units called sazas.
- When isaza disappeared, bukuku the gate keeper imposed himself as anew king. However, he was no recognized by the local chiefs.
- Bukuku was speared to death by his grandson karubumbi who became the king. helater changed his name to ndahula and became the 1st Chwezi king.
- The rule is said to have lasted between 1250 and 1350 ad.
- The tembuzi were cultivators and mainly grew cereals. They were also herdsmen and kept long horned cattle.

Qn. Who were the tembuzi

LINEAGE OF TEMBUZI AND THE BACHWEZI.

THE BUNYORO KITARA EMPIRE.

ORIGINS;

- Bunyoro kitara was one of the kingdoms in the interlucustrine region.
- The origins of the empire are still mythically (not clear) to the present day historians.

- However, its generally believed that the empire was founded by the bachwezi in 1350ad after the disappearance of the tembuzi.
- The batembuzi were therefore the 1st occupants of this empire.
- The founders of this empire (the bachwezi) of this empire are believed to have come from north or north-east part of Africa.
- The bachwezi were demi-gods, theywere human beings but with miraculous powers.
- Some historians believed that they were Cushite's and therefore came from the Ethiopian highlands.
- Others believed that they were Egyptians, Greeks or Portuguese.
- They moved south wards and settled in the interlucustrine region of east Africa.
- Their dynasty was founded by ndahula a grandson of isaza.
- At its peak, the empire consisted of parts of bunyoro, toro, Buganda, Rwanda, ankole, karagwe and Burundi etc.
- They established their capital at bigobyamugenyi in present day sembabule district.
- Their rule is said to have lasted for about 4-5 generations after which the empire collapsed.
- Following its collapse, several independent states emerged from ruins of bunyoro-kitala i.e.bunyoro, toro, Buganda, wanga etc.
- Some of the independent states remained under hima dynasties while others came under the Luo –babiito dynasty/sub-dynasties.
- Bunyoro kingdom that emerged under the Luo dynasty was a much smaller state under the Luo babiito rulers.
- Traditions in bunyoro claim that isingoma rukidi mpuga was the 1st of these babiito rulers.
- This babiito were a group of the Luo who moved south wards from Sudan and settled at pawiiir(chope)in the 15th century.
- They slowly came into contact with the bachwezi and the bantu subjects through intermarriages.
- The babiito gave up their culture for that of the bachwezi since the Chwezi culture was superior and reacher compared to theirs.
- Other traditions claimed that the Chwezi invited the Luo to take over power after they had become unpopular.

- Other traditions have it that the Luo-military conquered the empire.
- Whatever the source of origin, by ad 1500, bunyoro kitara kingdom was much smaller covering nearly the present day bunyoro kingdom including hoima, Masindi and kibaale district.

Qn. Describe the origins of Bunyoro-Kitara kingdom

THE BACHWEZI

ORIGINS.

- Little is known about the early history of the bachwezi.
- However, some historians say that they were Cushite's/galla people from Ethiopia.
- Others say that they came from either Egypt, Greece/Portugal.
- The Chwezi was the 2nd occupants of bunyoro kitara after the tembuzi.
- They were known by various names like the hima, tsutsi, huma, hinda, twa etc.
- They were demi-gods who possessed super natural powers hence performed miracles.
- They are said to have been the founders of bunyoro kitara kingdom.
- Their rule is said to have lasted for 4-5 generations ,1350-1500 ad.
- They were light skinned, tall, and had shining eyes.
- They could disappear when annoyed.
- Their first ruler was ndahula and the last was wamala.
- They are said to have entered Uganda from either the north east.
- They were the pastoral group of people who treasured the long-horned cattle.
- Their rule ended with the arrival of the luo-biito in the 15th century.

Qn. Who were the bachwezi

ORGANISATION OF THE CHWEZI EMPIRE.

The Chwezi empire was organized socially, politically and economically.

POLITICAL ORGANISATION

- The Chwezi empire had centralized monarchy with the king as the political head.
- The king had a title omukama and absolute authority in the kingdom.
- The empire was divided into small administrative units/provinces for easy administration.

- The king was assisted by a number of officials in administering these provinces.
- There was a hierarchy of officials who were appointed by the omukama to assist him to administer.
- The palace officials, slave artisans and palace women lived at the king's palace.
- They had reed palaces that surrounded by the royal enclosures called the orirembo.
- This formed the earth fortification for defense purposes.
- The Chwezi had royal regalia which included spears, stools, crowns, drums, these were symbols of state power.
- The king had a standing army which was used for defense and expansion. This army mainly used spears.
- The capital of this empire was at bigo-byamugenyi in the present day ssembabule district.
- Taxation of kingship was hereditary and patrilineal hence followed the fathersline.

ECONOMIC ORGANISATION.

- The Chwezi were pastoralists and they kept long horned cattle which provided them with meat, milk and hides etc.
- They also grew few crops which included coffee and grains.
- Iron working was carried out and they made spears and arrows out of iron.
- Pottery was also practiced and they made beautiful bowls, jars and dishes.
- They also carried out bark cloth making from the bark of the mutuba tree.
- Hunting of animals for meat and ivory was also carried out using spears.

SOCIAL ORGANISATION.

- The Chwezi believed in ruhanga as the supreme god.
- They also believed in many small gods serving different purposes.
- The Chwezi had super-natural powers, they could perform miracles and also disappeared when annoyed.
- They wore cow-hide sandals and bark cloth as their principle dress.

- They lived in grass thatched houses(huts)smeared with cow dung and decorated with colorful ornaments.
- They were great sportsmen. they participated in the games like athletics, wrestling and the board games-commonly known as OMWESO.
- Hunting was also carried out by the Chwezi as a social event.
- They were divided into two social classes, the bairu(cultivators) and the bahima (pastoralists and rulers.)

Qn. Describe the social, political and economic organization of the bachwezi empire (bunyoro-kitala empire by 1500 AD

CONTRIBUTION OF THE BACHWEZI TO THE HISTORY OF BUNYORO KITALA

They introduced centralized monarchy with the king as the political head of the kingdom.

- They introduced monarchical rule where administration was broken down into small units.
- They introduced the idea of a strong standing army and they fought using spears.
- They established their capital at bigo-byamugenyi a network of ditches (royal enclosures) for defense purposes.
- The omukama had a chain of government representative ruling over smaller sister states.
- The Chwezi introduced palace officials, slave artisans and royal women who stayed in the reed palaces.
- They introduced class systems like the bahima who were basically pastoralists and the bairu who were cultivators.
- The bahima(pastoralists)were the rulers while the bairu (peasants) were the subjects.
- The Chwezi were a pastoral group of people who kept long horned cattle which provided them with milk, meat, hides etc.
- They introduced the construction of reed palaces and the enclosures and ditches for defense purposes.
- They are remembered for setting up several palaces and earth works at kibengo, ntusi and mubende etc.
- They introduced royal regalia like spears, drums etc. which were symbols of state powers.
- They introduced the culture of coffee cultivation for chewing.

- They introduced the wearing of cow hide sandals.
- They lived in grass thatched houses smeared with cow dung and beautifully decorated inside.
- They were great sports men and they took part in games like wrestling, athletics, riddles, the board games etc.
- They were great hunters and they hunted wild animals for meat and ivory.
- They introduced iron working and made spears and head arrows out of iron.
- They introduced bark cloth manufacture from the bark of the mutuba tree, this became their principle dress.
- They also introduced the idea of basketweaving.

Qn. Explain the contribution of the Bachwezi to the history of the interlucustrine region

REASONS FOR THE COLLAPSE OF THE BUNYORO-KITALA KINGDOM.

- The reasons for the collapse of this empire are not clear, but the following factors have been suggested to explain this.
- The empire had grown too big to be effectively administered by one king.
- The Chwezi rulers also faced a lot of resistance from the local people like the bantu.
- Conflicts and rebellions among there princess who governed the provinces led to its collapse.
- Voluntary departure of some of the princess south wards also led to the collapse of the empire.
- Outbreak of epidermis like rinderpest, small pox and nagana led to massive loss of life that caused migration.
- The death of bihogo, the darling cow and the misfortunes that were about to befall them, might have made the Chwezi to migrate in order to avoid them.
- Outbreak of famine by locust invasion also made them to migrate south wards leading to its collapse.
- The death of wamala resulted into poor administration since it created power vacuum that made the empire weak.
- The Chwezi rulers were oppressive, mistreating their subjects hence hated.
- The loss of popularity by the Chwezi when the people realized that they were ordinary human beings not demi-gods.

- The kingdom was not well organized and their leaders paid less attention to their subjects leading to the constant rebellions.
- The empire also lacked a formidable army and fight against the invaders.
- They also lacked a strong economy following the disasters and epidemics that befall them.
- Absence of strong leadership since wamala was a weak king unable to control the provinces.
- The Luo invasion from the north led to the final collapse of the Chwezi empire.

Qn. Why did Bunyoro Kitara Empire collapse during the 16th century?

- **THE LUO-BITO AND THEIR CONTRIBUTION IN BUNYORO KITALA.**
- The luo-biito was a branch of the Luo speaking Nilotic who came from the bahel-gazel in Sudan.
- They were also called the luo-bito or babiito.
- They arrived during the reign of wamala when the Chwezi empire was already fragile.
- After destroying the Chwezi rule, they established the luo-biito dynasty.
- Their dynasty lasted up to 1967, when obote abolished the kingdoms in Uganda.
- Isingoma mug rukidi was the founder of this dynasty.
- Sources suggested that isingoma rukidi mug came from a place called bukedi.
- According to bunyoro traditions, the Luo came peacefully in small groups and settled among the Chwezi.
- They inter-married with the Chwezi and adopted many aspects of their culture.
- The Chwezi culture was superior to that of the Luo, they had a rich material culture with reed palace and royal encloses.
- Rukidi mug had to be trained in the Chwezi practices especially the rituals of kingship.
- The biito adopted many aspects of the life of the Chwezi like the reed palaces for the kings, royal regalia etc.
- The luo-biito therefore lost their identity. Their descendants are of bantu than the Luo in terms of language and culture.
- They set up related biito dynasties in karagwe, Busoga, Buganda etc.
- The dynasties had similar POLITICAL institutions and royal regalia to those of buyer.
- The Luo introduced pet names like akiiki, abwooli, adyeri, amooti etc.

- They introduced the system of royal burial and burial sites(tombs)for their kings.
- They also initiated the system of granting land to clans.
- They also introduced new royal regalia like the throne (nyangawo)the royal drum(tibamulinda)etc.

Qn. Explain the contribution of the Luo-Biito to the history of Bunyoro Kitara.

AMAP

RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN BUNYORO KITALA AND HER NEIGHBOURS.

- After the collapse of bunyoro kitara, anew and smaller bunyoro emerged.
- It continued exerting a lot of pressure on the neighboringstates.
- Her neighbors included Buganda, langi, Busoga, westNile etc.
- Bunyoro used raids on her neighbors like Acholi, toro and Busoga etc.
- Initially, theaided resulted into bunyoro expanding her territories.
- However, atalvertime, these raids made her loose much of her territories and powers to her neighbors.
- In the 19thcentury, her raids in Buganda were disastrous, instead some parts of bunyoro fell to Buganda.
- In 1650, bunyoro attracted karagwe but she was defeated.
- In the 18thcentury, kabaka junju annexed buddu from bunyoro.
- Towards the end of the 18thcentury, bunyoro raided ankole but she was defeated.
- She also lost the territory south of Katanga to Ntare iv.
- Between 1800 and 1840, bunyoro continued to lose territories like kooki to Buganda.
- After 1830, bunyoro and toro became enemies because of the poor relationship.
- Bunyoro traded with Acholi, alur, langi, itesots, Buganda etc.
- Lator, when the Britisharrived, most of bunyoros neighbors joined them to fight bunyoro.
- This marked the end of bunyoros power and glory.

Qn. Describe Bunyoro Kitara’s relationship with her neighbors up to 1850

CHAPTER 7: THE RISE OF NEW KINGDOMS

The collapse of the Chwezi empire and the coming of the Luo-biito led the emergence of several independent kingdoms in the interlucustrine kingdom.

Initially, the biito kingdom of bunyoro was the most important, with Buganda, Ankole and Karagwe, rising and expanding from the around 17th century partly as a reaction to Bunyoro's aggression.

Some of these states remained under the control of the Him dynasty while others were controlled by the biito dynasty and sub-dynasties.

Likewise, even in the areas outside the interlucustrine region, there was political development and the formation of new and independent states.

BUNYORO KINGDOM (1500-1967).

ORIGINS

Little is known about the origins of bunyoro kingdoms.

However, it is believed that after the collapse of the Chwezi empire, many new states emerged and these included bunyoro, Ankole, Buganda, Wanga, Toro and Karagwe.

Thus, bunyoro was originally part of the famous Chwezi empire.

But following the collapse of the Chwezi, the Babiito failed to restore bunyoro –kitala to its glory.

This led to the breaking off of provinces or territories to form new states.

Therefore, it is believed that bunyoro kingdom was established by the Babiito rulers under Isingoma Rukidi Mug.

Mpuga was part of the Luo-immigrants who settled in southern bunyoro in the 16th century.

For many years, bunyoro raided neighboring states and steadily expanded.

Qn. Describe the origins of Bunyoro Kingdom

RISE AND EXPANSION OF BUNYORO KINGDOM

- The presence of strong rulers like Omukama Kamurasi and Kabalega greatly expanded the kingdom.
- The kingdom also had a strong and well equipped army called Abarusura.

- The role of the omukama in the army as the chief command greatly motivated the soldiers during the battle fields leading to their success.
- Bunyoro carried out successful raids against her neighbors which anybody had to expand.
- Bunyoro had fertile soils and good climate which ensured constant food supply to the increasing population.
- Increase in the kingdom population due to the increased food supply led to its expansion.
- Bunyoro's participation in both local and external trade also boosted her economy leading to her expansion.
- Acquisition of guns from the long distance trade strengthened bunyoro's army leading to its expansion.
- The kingdom was highly centralized and this enabled the king to exercise his authority over the kingdom.
- The division of the kingdom into provinces (sazas) ensured effective administration of the kingdom which led to its expansion.
- The loyalty of the chiefs to the omukama in regarding the kingdom avoided conflicts leading to the growth and development of bunyoro.
- Acquisition of iron rich territories of kooki and buddu enabled it to manufacture its own weapons which strengthened its military capacity.
- Bunyoro also manufactured iron tools which boosted agriculture hence strengthening her economy.
- By the 17th century, the kingdom was expanded and was the most powerful kingdom in the interlucustrine region.

Qn. Explain the factors for the rise and expansion of Bunyoro Kingdom

ORGANISATION OF BUNYORO KINGDOM

Bunyoro kingdom was organized politically, social and economically

POLITICAL ORGANISATION.

- Bunyoro kingdom had centralized system of administration headed by omukama.
- The omukama had absolute authority since he could appoint, promote and dismiss officials at his own will.

- Bunyoro had a regular (standing army) called abarusura which was responsible for responsible for defense and expansion.
- The omukama was the head of the judiciary hence was the final court of appeal in all judicial matters.
- The omukama had a number of officials at his court that performed house hold duties and ceremonies.
- They also observed the royal regalia like spears, shields, etc. were symbols of power.
- Bunyoro was divided into small administrative units for easy administration.
- Each of these districts(counties)were governed by achief appointed by the omukama.
- The chief was responsible for ensuring law and order, mintingjustice, collecting taxes and mobilizing soldiers and for the army.
- The chief also presided over civil and criminal cases in their areas.
- The omukama was also the commander in chief and was responsible for making military decisions.
- Succession to kingship was hereditary and patrilineal since the omukama was succeeded by his son.

SOCIAL ORGANIZATION

- Bunyoro kingdom was divided into two distinct social classes, the bahima and the bairu class.
- The bahima were pastoralists and formed the ruling class while the bairu were cultivators and formed the subject class.
- They believed in the supreme god called ruhanga(creator).
- They also believed in small gods like wamala-the god of plenty, muhingo-the god or war, mugizi-the god of lake albert.
- Each clan in bunyoro had its own and god were sacrifices were offered from.
- They offered sacrifices inform of beer, meat, milk, grainsetc. to appease their gods.
- Number of cultural and religious festivals and rituals like harvest, marriage funeral rites were also observed.
- They observed the royal regalia like drums, shieldsetc. as symbols of state powers.
- The bunyoro were united with a similar language and way of life.

ECONOMIC ORGANIZATION

- They were cattle keepers and they mainly kept long-horned cattle which provided them with milk, meat, hides etc.
- They also carried out cultivation and crops like potatoes, millet, beans etc.
- Fishing was carried out by communities living near lake albert and rivers to supplement on their diet.
- Iron working was also carried out and their made weaponslike arrow heads, shields and agricultural tools like hoes, panga etc.
- Salt mining was also carried out mainly at lake katwe.
- Bark cloth making was also carried out on a small scale.
- They hunted wild animals like rhinoceros etc. for meat, ivory, skins etc.
- They also participated in both local and long distance trade with their neighbors like Buganda, Acholi etc.
- Bunyoro collected taxes and tributes from the vessel states as a source of revenue.
- The omukama controlled all the wealth and had powers to distribute it to its subjects.
- They were great pot makers and and manufacturers and they manufacture beautiful jars, bowls and dishes.
- Bunyoro also carried out raids on her neighbors as a source of wealth.

Qn. Describe the social, political and economic organization of Bunyoro Kingdom

THE DISINTERGRATION OF BUNYORO KINGDOM.

After 1700, the kingdom started to decline and this because;

- The kingdom had grown too big to be effectively controlled.
- The presence of local and internal rebellions like land disputes had weakened the kingdom.
- Succession disputes among the princess in bunyoro also contributed to its decline.
- Constant raided and attacks from bunyoros neighbors like Buganda made it lose some of its territories.
- Military weakness of bunyoro compared to its neighbors like Buganda made it to be out competed.

- Presence of weak and incomplete rulers like olimi 1, mabongo and owiny who failed completely to control the kingdom.
- Bunyoro had a loose confederation of states hence easily broke off.
- The loss of iron rich territories of buddu and kooki to Buganda greatly weakened bunyoro's economy.
- The rise of powerful kingdoms like Buganda greatly challenged bunyoro's strength leading to its decline.
- The oppressive and exploitative rulers caused hatred forcing some vassal states to break off.
- When kabalega came to the throne in 1870s, bunyoro kingdom again grew in strength.

Qn. What factors led to the disintegration of Bunyoro kingdom after 1700AD

KABALEGA AND HIS REFORMS IN BUNYORO

- Kabalega was born in 1850 to omukama kamurasi and kanyange nyamutwalibwa.
- He came to power in 1870 and embarked on the following social, political, and economic reforms.
- He created a highly centralized political system in bunyoro.
- He was assisted by the prime minister and various chiefs in the administration.
- He established a strong standing army of 20,000 men called abarusura.
- He also embarked on various wars of conquest to recover the lost territories of kooki and buddu.
- He emphasized the importance of unity to defeat bunyoro's enemies like Buganda.
- He also reformed abarusura into a well-trained and well equipped army.
- Kabalega abolished the social classes to promote unity among all bunyoro like he promotes abairu to high position in government.
- He emphasized the importance of merit and not classes in appointment.
- He encouraged the kingdom's participation in the long distance trade where he acquired guns.
- He also encouraged agriculture to ensure steady supply of food to the population.
- Through his wealth of conquest, kabalega extended his influence to parts of Buganda, toro, lango, bwamba etc.
- Bunyoro kingdom thrived up to 1890s when it was finally colonized by the British.

Qn. What reforms did omukama Kabalega introduce in Bunyoro

ANKOLE KINGDOM.

ORIGINS

- Ankole was one of the kingdom that made up the bunyoro kitale empire of the Chwezi.
- It was founded by ruhinda in about 1500 ad.
- He established ahinda dynasty that ruled ankole up to 1967 when obote abolished kingdoms.
- The kingdom was established in the south western parts of Uganda around the 15th century.
- Initially, ankole was called karokarungi meaning peaceful land/country.
- At 1st, ankole was a small area made up of only the present day rwampala country.
- Between the 15-17th centuries, ankole remained a small and insignificant kingdom.
- Its expansion started around 18th century when it produced a number of ambitious kings who extended its boundaries.
- The people who inhabit are called banyankole.
- They are divided into social groups like bahima (rulers and pastoralists) and the bairu (subjects and cultivators).
- Nevertheless, they speak a similar language called runyankole.

Qn. Describe the origins of Ankole kingdom

MAP

THE RISE AND EXPANSION OF ANKOLE KINGDOM

- Initially the kingdom was small and this ensured effective administration.
- The kingdom also had a centralized system of administration which concentrated powers around the omugabe leading to effective control.
- The good succession system ensured political stability in the kingdom.
- The king absolute authority since he could appoint and dismiss chiefs at will, and his words were law. This ensured loyalty to him.
- Banyankole were also united under their king which ensured peace in the kingdom.
- Successful raids by some of their kings like Ntare I expanded his influence to shima nad rwampala.

- Ankole had strong and capable leaders like Ntare I and the Rwebishengye who expanded the kingdom.
- The division of the kingdom into districts promoted effective administration.
- They had a strong economy since they were cultivators, pastoralists and also participated in trade.
- The decline of Bunyoro kingdom also favored its expansion.
- The Mugabe maintained unity and loyalty in the kingdom by rewarding the royal chiefs and subjects with land and cattle.
- Ankole also traded with its neighbors like Buganda, Bunyoro etc. which strengthened her economy.
- Acquisition of guns from their trading activities with the Arabs and the Swahili increased its military strength.
- The coming of the British also added to the strength of Ankole kingdom because the British rewarded them with counties for their collaboration against Kabalanga.
- The re-organization of the army with modern weapons like guns also increased Ankole's military strength.

Qn. Explain the factors for the rise and expansion of the Ankole kingdom up to the 19th century

ORGANISATION OF ANKOLE KINGDOM

POLITICAL ORGANISATION.

- Ankole had a centralized system of administration under the Mugabe who led the political authority.
- He appointed officials and made military decisions.
- The king was the final court of appeal in all disputes and his words were law.
- Succession to kingship was hereditary along patrilineal lines upon the king's death and he was succeeded by his elder son.
- Ankole was ruled by a pastoral aristocracy, the Bahima, while the cultivators the Bahima were the subject class.
- The king was assisted by a chain of chiefs (abakungu) who checked on his authority.

- The Mugabe, queenmother, princess and prince formed the royal family.
- The royal resided in the palace royal kraal.
- Next to the Mugabe in hierarchy was the prime minister-engazi.
- The prime minister moved with Mugabewherever he went and at times perfumed some duties on his behalf.
- Ankole kingdom was divided into 16 districts for easy administration and this included kashari, rwampara, nyabushozi, kazoo, buhweju, igara, sheema etc.
- Each of these districts were under an appointed chief called making.
- The kingdom was further divided into chiefdoms and each under its own chief.
- The role of the chief was to keep law and order, collected taxes and maintain justice.
- Chiefs organized and led military units in each region(emitwe).
- There was a standing army that was used for defense and expansion.
- The army mainly used spears, bows, arrows and shields.
- They alsoobserved the royal regalia like royal drum, fire, crown etc.
- The royal fire was not allowed to go out until the reigning king died.

ECONOMIC ORGANIZATION

- Pastoralism was their main occupation, the bahima mainly kept the long horned cattle.
- They supplied milk, meat, hides and other daily products.
- The barium were mainly cultivators and many grew crops like millet, beans, potatoes etc.
- They practice shifting cultivation since land was plenty.
- Carpentry was also practiced and they made wooden pots, stools, plates etc.
- There was also a class of [porters who made items like ports, dishesetc. out of clay.
- Iron working was also practiced. iron was smelted to make hoes, arrows etc.
- They traded with the coastal Swahili and Arabs in goods like clothes, beads, etc.

SOCIAL ORGANISATION

- Ankole kingdom was divide into two social classes, the pastoral him and the agricultural barium.
- The second class(barium)was not highly respected.

- They were always despised and could not even dream becoming kings.
- Even marriage and sexual intercourse between the barium and bahima was considered as asocial disgrace and was highly discouraged.
- Owning cattle was a symbol of prestige and enhanced one's status in the society.
- Those with few cows were always scolded and dispersed.
- Cattle was used for paying dowery and rewarding faithful servants.
- People with special skills like carpenters, porters, black smith were highly respected disputes in their social class.
- The Mugabe would acquire the services of ant craft man and always rewarded them generously with cows, goats and sheep's.
- They believed in the supreme being called ruhanga-the creator.
- They also believed in lesser gods (divinities)like kazooba, kagolo, wamala and omusisi to whom they offered sacrifices.
- The spirits of the dead were highly respected as they could bring favor and even punished the living.
- Scarifies of beer, milk and grains were offered to them at family shrines.

Qn. Describe the social, political and economic organization of the Ankole kingdom

DECLINE OF ANKOLE KINGDOM

- The constant clan rebellions weakened the kingdom leading to its decline.
- Raids from bunyoro kingdom also weakened ankole kingdom.
- Succession disputes especially after the death of Mugabe nkutambuka around 1870 further weakened the kingdom.
- The death of good leaders like Ntare 1v in i895 created a power vacuum leading to its decline.
- Epidermis like jiggers, small pox and rinderpest greatly weakened the kingdom.
- Hostility from some of the chiefdoms like agar, buhweju, buziba. mpororoetc. created disunity in the kingdom leading to its decline.
- The coming of the British also weakened the kingdom. They collaborated with nuwa mbaguta, signed the 1901, ankole agreement that led to loss of ankoles independence.

- The kingdom had grown too big to be effectively administered by one king.
- Natural calamities like drought affected the kingdom leading to its decline.
- Constant attacks from neighbors like Rwanda under mwami rwabugiri weakened the kingdom.
- Conflicts between the barium and the bahima rulers in the 1940s created disunity in the kingdom.
- The abolition of kingdoms by obote in 1967 finally ended the kingdom.

Qn. What factors led to the decline of the Ankole kingdom

BUGANDA KINGDOM

ORIGINS:

- The origins of Buganda kingdom are still not clear (debatable) to the present day historians.
- However, its generally believed that Buganda was initially part of the large bunyoro kitara empire under the Chwezi.
- the kingdom was established on the northern shores of LakeVictoria.
- The baganda belong to the interlacustrine Bantu group.
- The earliest inhabitants of Buganda lived in busiro,kyadondo, and mawokota counties as early as the 15th century.
- Oral traditions claim that Buganda was founded by kaita-kintu.
- Kintu is believed to have come from Mount Elgon region around AD 1314.
- He passed through bugisu, Busoga, Budamaland finally into Buganda.
- He the seized power from the original 5-6 clan heads and clowned himself as the sabataka.
- He is said to have come with 13-14 of the presents clans of Buganda.
- Bunyoro traditions claims that the founder of Buganda was prince kato kimera.
- Kimera is said to have come from bunyoro around AD 1374.
- He is believed to have been atwin brother of Isingoma Rukidi Mpuga,the founder of the Biito dynasty in Bunyoro
- Kimera curved Buganda from Bunyoro kitara which was on the collapse.
- He is believed to have come with 5-6 clans of Bunyoro.

- Other traditions claim that Buganda originated from the Bantu clan who lived in the area back around AD 1000 and others from Eastern Uganda.
- Other clans of Buganda came from Bunyoro and Ssesse islands.
- Whatever the source of origin, the original Buganda was centered around Kyadondo, Busiro and Mawokota.
- By the 17th century, Buganda had expanded to cover Ssinga, Gomba and Butambala.
- It was Kabaka Kateregga who captured the counties from Bunyoro.
- By the 19th century, Buganda had expanded to include Buddu and Kooki.
- It was Kabaka Jjunju who captured these counties.
- Kabaka Mawanda captured the counties of Bulemezi, Kyaggwe and Bugerere.
- These counties were captured in the last half of the 19th centuries.
- Kabaka Muteesa brought in the counties of Buyaga and Bugangayizi (Ndaiga) and Buruli.
- These were annexed after the 1894 war with the help of the British.

Qn Describe the origins of Buganda kingdom

FACTORS THAT LED TO THE RISE OF BUGANDA KINGDOM

- Buganda kingdom had good and suitable climate for agriculture.
- It was gifted with fertile soils and enough rainfall which favoured agriculture.
- Presence of plenty of food especially matooke for the growing population which led to the growth of the kingdom.
- Division of specialization/labor whereby the work of supplying food was left to women and children, as men concentrated on warfare, hunting, backcloth manufacture etc led to the expansion of the kingdom.
- Buganda started as a small state of only three (3) counties hence easy to defend and administer effectively by the king and his chiefs.
- Buganda had a highly centralized system of administration which enabled the kabaka to effectively control.
- The kabaka had absolute authority in the kingdom which made all subjects loyal to him.
- The good succession system in the kingdom minimized civil wars leading to growth.

- The presence of a strong standing army defended the kingdom and conquered other areas leading to on expansion.
- There was also a strong body guard which used to protect the kabaka.
- The decline of Bunyoro kingdom from the 18th century also favoured Buganda's growth.
- Buganda was surrounded by weak neighbors like Busoga, Ankole etc which she easily subdued hence favouring her growth.
- Buganda also had able and competent kings like kateregga, jjunju, ssuuna, mawanda, kyabaggu, ssemakooliro etc.
- Buganda was able to increase her source of iron, ivory and slaves hence economic power from the conquered areas.
- The absorption of the conquered people into Buganda also favoured her growth.
- All subjects whether conquered or indigenous were treated equally to ensure justice.
- Establishment of profitable trade links with the Arabs and Swahil favoured her growth.
- She was able to obtain cloth, glassware, beads, guns and ammunitions.
- The kabaka could use some of the above goods to reward his officials and soldiers.
- Buganda also grew because there was royal control over the market places.
- The kabaka through his chiefs ensured that all revenue collected as market dues was sent to him.
- The early monopoly of guns gave Buganda an advantage over her neighbors.
- The coming of the British also strengthened her position in the region.
- The kabaka married from all the major clans to ensure loyalty and unity.
- There was no royal clan in Buganda that would monopolize kingship since kings took their mothers clans.
- Constant supply of tributes from the conquered states ensured a strong economy.
- The strategic location of the kingdom was an advantage, it had river Nile in the east, Lake Victoria in the south and Lake Kyoga in the north which protected her from external attacks.
- The kingdom had well developed roads running from the capital (Mengo) to all the counties favoured her growth.
- Existence of a similar language and culture created social unity in the kingdom.

Qn What factors led to the rise and expansion of Buganda kingdom.

Map

ORGANISATION OF BUGANDA KINGDOM

Political organization:

- Buganda had a centralized system of administration with the political powers centered around the kabaka (king).
- The kabaka was assisted by the lukiiiko (the legislative council).
- Succession to the kingdom was hereditary since upon the death of the king, he was succeeded by his elder son.
- The king had absolute powers as he could appoint and dismiss chiefs at will and his word was law.
- He also had final control over land; he was the "ssabataka".
- The kabaka married from all the major clans to ensure loyalty and unity.
- Next to the kabaka in command was the katikilo (prime minister).
- His major role was to advise the kabaka and at times performed duties on his behalf.
- The Mulamuzi (chief justice) and the Muwanika (treasurer) were other prominent chiefs.
- The queen mother (Namasole) and the queen sister also advised the king.
- The king also had palace officials who spied for him.
- For easy administration Buganda was divided into counties.
- Each of these counties was under a chief appointed by the kabaka.
- These chiefs were answerable to the katikilo.
- The chiefs also supplied the king with food, bark cloth, beer, timber, firewood etc.

- There was freedom of peasant movement in the kingdom with the permission of aheadman.
- Peasants could be granted land by the local headman on payment of tribute in form of food, labour, beer and military service.
- The youth were sent to the palace courts to work as pages (abagalagala)
- They observed the royal regalia which included the drum, spear, shield, animal skins etc.
- Buganda had a standing army (abajaasi) which was used for defence and expansion.
- The kabaka also had royal body guards (abambowa) to protect the kabaka.

Economic organization:

- Agriculture was the backbone of Buganda's economy and they mainly grew banana, sweet potatoes, cassava and vegetables.
- They practiced crop rotation at an interval of 3 years after which they moved to new areas
- They also kept animals like cattle, pigs, sheep, goats and chicken for meat, milk and eggs.
- The kabaka and chiefs had large herds of cattle which were looked after by the Hima herdsmen (abalaalo).
- Trade was also carried out using barter trade system and cowrie – shells.
- They traded in iron hoes, backcloth, slaves, ivory and guns with the Arabs, Swahili, Basoga and Ankole.
- Fishing was also practiced by those living on the shores of Lake Victoria and the islands of Ssese and Buvuma.
- They hunted wild animals like elephants for ivory, antelopes and buffaloes etc.
- Barkcloth making was also carried out from the bark of the Mutuba tree.
- The Baganda were also skilled iron workers and they made agricultural tools, swords, knives, ornaments out of iron.
- Canoe and boat building industry was also an important industry since the Baganda lived near rivers and lakes.
- Taxation was also an important source of revenue to Buganda kingdom.
- They collected tributes from the vassal states as a source of revenue.

- They also raided their neighbours like bunyoro, and Busoga etc as a source of wealth to the kingdom.
- Weaving of mats and basket, and making of pots were also important.

Social organization

- Socially, the Buganda society was organized on clan basis.
- Each clan in Buganda had a clan head and special areas of origin and its own burial sites.
- Each clan had a totem which was either an animal or a plant.
- Buganda was divided into social classes; the royals (abalangila), notables (bataka), commoners (bakopi), and slaves (baddu).
- Religiously, the kabaka was the spiritual leader of Buganda. He was considered to be semi divine with direct links with the ancestors.
- Each family or clan in Buganda had its own shrine where sacrifices like beer, animals, and food were offered to the ancestors.
- Religion was centered on the belief in ancestral spirits (lubaale cult).
- The baganda also believed in a supernatural being called "katonda".
- The lubaale were spirits of people believed to have had supernatural powers. They could be consulted through prophets or mediums.
- Different spirits were consulted on different matters. For example, musoke was in charge of rain, ddungu for hunting, kibuuka was in charge of the war, walumbe for death, nagawonye for drought etc.
- There were also diviners who consulted the spirit of the other. There was a class of herbalists who treated those who were sick.
- Witch doctors were always consulted in case of some misfortunes or to ask for favour.
- The baganda dressed in barkcloth, animal skins, beads and necklaces.
- Marriage was polygamous much as monogamy also existed.
- They celebrated important events like the birth of twins, marriage, naming of children etc.
- Respect to elders was highly emphasized among the baganda.
- Boat racing, wrestling, and dances were common forms of entertainment in Buganda.
- They had special royal burial grounds for the kings; tombs (amasiro).

- The baganda lived in grass thatched huts built of wooden poles and mud.
- The baganda spoke a language called Luganda and this promoted unity among them.
- In a home stead, the man was the head and his word was final.

Qn. Describe the social, political, and economic Organisation of Buganda kingdom.

RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN BUGANDA AND HER NEIGHBOURS:

- Buganda's neighbours were bunyoro, busoga, ankole, tooro, kooki etc.
- Her relationship with some was cordial and strained with
- Buganda traded with her neighbours for example she exchanged iron implements with bunyoro for items like salt.
- However, Buganda also had a sour relationship with bunyoro.
- There were numerous conflicts between baganda and bunyoro.
- During these wars, bunyoro lost kooki, buddu, mawogola, buluuli and bulemeezi to Buganda and this worsened the relationship between these two states.
- In the east, Buganda controlled Busoga during the times of kabaka kyabaggu.
- Kabaka Jjunju also forced kooki to accept Buganda's overlordships.
- Buganda also constantly raided her neighbours bunyoro, Busoga, Tooro and ankole etc.
- These raids were basically for slaves, ivory, women, cattle and grains.
- The baganda also attacked the islands of buvuma, kalanagala and ukerewe on Lake Victoria.
- These raids even extended to parts of western Kenya.
- However, states that were loyal to Buganda were always spared from these raids for example kooki.
- Some baganda intermarried with their neighbours like the busoga and the bunyoro.

- The baganda also recruited conquered youth into their army in order to increase on their military capacity.

\Qn. Explain Buganda's relationships with her neighbours.

KARAGWE KINGDOM

ORIGINS:

- Karagwe kingdom is one of the interlacustrine kingdoms located between Rwanda, Burundi and Lake Victoria.(north-western part of present day tanzania)
- It is believed that the earliest Bantu who settled in this were farmers growing mainly millet, yams and sorghum.
- These Bantu had come from the south west direction between the 5th and 10th centuries.
- They are said to have stayed here for two to three centuries before migrating north –east ankole bunyoro and toro.
- A section of them later returned to karagwe fleeing from the luo invasion.
- By the time they returned to karagwe, they had mingled with the Chwezi and had adopted the Chwezi culture and customs.
- They reached karagwe around the 16th century and set up the hinda dynasty.
- They were led by Ruhindu, Bachwezi prince who became the founder of the dynasty.
- When they reached karagwe, Ruhinda deposed the local ruler Nono (son of maliya) of the básiita clan and founded the hinda dynasty.
- The bahinda easily occupied the area and established their leadership over the local people.

- But it's not clear as to how these new comers readily established themselves over the local people.
- Some historians believe that they were welcomed because of their intelligence and military ability and good administration.
- Others believe that they may have offered the local people gifts of cattle to win their support.
- After establishing his rule in karagwe, Ruhind setup his capital at bwehange.it was to be the center of his rule.
- After setting up his capital, he sent out his sons with royal regalia like spears, drums, clowns and shields to establish hinda sub dynasties in the surrounding areas.
- This gave rise to small independent kingdoms under his sons like gisaka, kyamtwala, ihangiro, buzina, busubi, ukereqwe and nasa.
- These were not under the direct authority of ruhinda qand upon his death, they all became independent.

Qn. Describe the origins of Karagwe kingdom

Map.

ORGANISATION OF KARAGWE KINGDOM.

Political organization

- Karagwe had acentralised system of administation with political power centered on the omukama.
- Succession to kingship was hereditary and was based on patrilineal lines.
- They observed the royal regaria like spears, drums and shields as symbols of state [power.
- The karagwe state was built on the clan system
- The clan system was centered on the leader called muharambwa.
- The muharambwa presided over all the religious functions in the kingdom.
- Clan members among the banyambo were used for efficient administration.
- Clan leaders were changed with the collection of taxes and tributes.
- They were also supposed to lead clan courts and settled disputes among the people.
- The clans were grouped into eight bigger units or chiefdoms kianja, bukara, kyamtwala, casaba, ihangiro, misenyi, bugaboo, karagwe,.

- But the creation of several independent hind sub-dynasties created rivalries and weakened the hinda administration.
- Each of the chiefdoms became an ihanga (nation) and was headed by a hinda chief.
- The chief was the final man on everything in the chiefdom.
- He appointed officials and had powers over life and death of the supreme judge. he could even dismiss a clan head if his people appeal.
- The chiefs also controlled trade links with their neighbours .
- Age sets were established and boys of the same age were sent to the residence of the local chiefs to be taught military skills, administration and respect for elders.
- From this group, the most outstanding youth were sent to serve at the omukamas court.
- This system ensured unity because all the clans were equal in status, each of them having such opportunities.
- Karagwe did not have a standing army, but during the times of war, able bodied body men from all all clans were called upon to fight.
- Social organization.
- Karagwe was divided into social classes , bahima(pastoralists)and the banyambo(farmers).
- Karagwe was based on clans.each clan had a totem and was headed by a clan head-muharambwa.
- They believed in the supreme being called ruhanga the creator.
- They also believed in ancestral spirits who could bring them favour or misfortune.
- Shrines were built in each chiefdom and animal sacrifices were made to the gods
- the clan heads and chiefs performed a spiritual role presiding over the religious functions.
- They celebrated important days and events such as birthdays and marriages.
- They also liked swimming because of the presence of water bodies.
- Economic organization.
- The bayombo were cultivators, they grew crops like millet coffee bananas beans sorghum and yams etc.
- The bahima were pastoralists who kept long horned cattle for meat,milk and skins.
- The bayombo also carried out trade with the neighbouring societies like Rwanda and bunyoro.

- They exchanged trade items like ivory and iron products for goods like iron tools.
- Karagwe also controlled the long distance trade route to Buganda
- Fishing was also carried out by communities living near Lake Victoria and the rivers.
- Hunting was also carried out as a major source of meat.
- Iron working was also carried out and they made weapons, spears, arrows heads and axes.
- Mining especially iron and salt was also common.
- Pottery and weaving were also important industries producing dishes, pots and mats, baskets respectively.
- Qtn. Describe the social, political and economic organization of Karagwe kingdom in the 19th century.

EFFECTS OF THE HINDA DYNASTY ON THE PEOPLE OF KARAGWE REGION.

- The effects of the Hindu dynasty were political, social and economic.
- They introduced the belief in ancestral spirits.
- They also introduced and encouraged the age set system. Boys of the same age groups were collected at their local chiefs residence where they received instructions in correct manners towards their equals and also received military training.
- Outstanding candidates were sent to the king's court where they learnt court manners and correct language for particular occasions.
- They introduced iron working like the making of spears, axes, pangas etc.
- They introduced the keeping of long horned cattle replacing the agricultural economy.
- The Bayombo also carried out trade with their neighbours.
- They exchanged trade items like ivory for iron products.
- Karagwe also controlled the long distance trade route to Buganda.
- They introduced the centralized system of administration which replaced the family/clan system on the clan leader-muharambwa.
- Clans were grouped into eight bigger units or chiefdoms; Kianja, Bukara, Kyamtwala, Kiziba, Ihangiro, Misenyi, Bugaboo, Karagwe.
- Clan leaders were in charge of collecting tributes and also led clan courts that settled disputes.

- Each of the chiefdoms became an ihanga(nation)and its chiefs could dismiss a clan head if his people appeal
- The chiefs also had administrative,religiousand judicial powersand also controlled the trade links with the neighbours.
- They introduced the royal regalia which included spears,clowns,drums and animal skins.
- But the creation of several independant hinda sub dynasties created rivalries and weakened the hinda administration in karagwe. Qtn.explain the contribution of the hinda dynasty to the people of karagwe.

DECLINE OF THE KARAGWE KINGDOM

- The kingdom had grown too big to be effectively administered by one king.
- The death of strong and competent leaders like ruhinda created a power vacuum.
- The rise of weak successors after the death of ruhinda also led to the decline of the kingdom.
- Some of them were oppressive and inefficient hence were hated by the subjects.
- The creation of the several independent hinda sub dynasties created rivalries and weakened the hinda administration in karagwe.
- The constant civil wars in the kingdom due to the rivalries also weakened the kingdom.
- Epidemic diseases like malaria,smallpox,sleeping sickness etc greatly weakened the kingdom.
- Raids from bunyoro especially in 1770 greatly weakened the kingdom.
- The weak economy due to the constant civil wars and epidemics weakened the kingdom leading to its decline.
- Natural calamities like drought also affected the kingdom leading to its decline.

Qtn. What factors led to the decline of Karagwe kingdom.

- THE MASAI.
- The masai are traditional,semi-nomadic pastoralists who belong to the plain nilotics of east Africa.

- They migrated southwards in the early 17th century, settling east of the rift valley.
- In the course of their migration, they were influenced by the groups they met on the way such as the highland Nilotes whom they followed in the rift valley.
- The Masai eventually settled in the area stretching from the Uasin-Gishu plateau to the Laikipia and Samburu uplands.
- By the 18th century, they had also occupied the northern parts of Tanzania.
- They existed in two distinct sub-groups; the Kwavi Masai (Illoikop) who were cultivators, and the Purko Masai (Ilmaasai) who were pastoralists.
- The Kwavi and the Purko Masai spoke the same language and even followed the same customs however, they did not live peacefully since the pastoral Masai continually terrorized the area, raiding their neighbours for cattle.

ORGANISATION OF THE MAASAI.

Political organization:

- The Masai society had no centralized system of administration.
- Instead the clan was the basis of political organization among the Masai.
- They were divided into 16 independent clans or groups.
- Each clan had its own leader called Oloibon and he handled its affairs.
- Each clan had its own territory, cattle brand, pasture and water source.
- The 16 clans or groups were divided into age groups.
- It is through these age groups were divided into age groups.
- It was governed through elders, the most important being the laibon.
- A young man became a member after circumcision performed at the age of 16.
- After an interval of 15 years, another age set was initiated.
- After 15 years as senior warriors, they advanced to the status of junior elders, and 15 years, to that of senior elders.
- Their age sets were linear and their names were unique and never repeated.
- The most active age set was that of Moran the junior warrior group led by a military captain called Olai Guanani.
- He was arranged for the distribution of any captured children and cattle.
- Military training was emphasized among the Masai.

- Raiding of neighbouring societies was also encouraged.
- The elders administered the clans or groups of the clans.
- Murder of a clansman was punishable either by killing a member of the murderer's clan or by paying 49 heads of cattle to the bereaved family /clan.
- From the mid 19th century, the laibon became the centre of political power.
- After initiation, the boys became junior warriors (Ilmurran)
- Once elected, a laibon was presented with a ceremonial club oriakha to symbolize his new status.
- He organized cattle raids and arranged the distribution of the booty.
- A successful raid was a sign of social success and prestige.
- The Ilmurran lived separately in manyattas where they were drilled in military techniques.
- From junior warriors, they progressed to senior warriors and finally to senior elders.

Social organisation;

- Socially, they believed in one supreme creator –enkai/engai.
- Enkai was the source of life and punished bad people.
- Sacrifices were offered to the enkai from sacred places.
- The laibon was the most important religious figure and prayed to the enkai on behalf of the people.
- He guided the society, had ritual powers and could prophesie.
- He could also make charms for success in wars.
- Senior elders helped to organise the society especially during difficult periods.
- Women and children were the lowest members in the society.
- The warrior classes (morans) defended the home steads.
- They conducted raids and surveyed areas for grazing.
- There was also cultural exchange between the Masai and the neighbouring tribes.
- For example the Kikuyu adopted circumcision and the military techniques of the Masai.
- They had no family structures and thus built no permanent homes.
- They only had temporary structures locally called manyattas.
- Marriage among the Masai was polygamous,

- The masai also allowed polyandry whereby a woman married not only her husband but the entire age set.
- They also had a tradition of beautifying their bodies.
- They pierced and stretched their robes using stones, thorns and twigs and the women wore various forms of beads.

Economic organization:

- Economically, the masai were divided into two distinct people; the purko maasai and the kwavi maasai.
- The purko maasai who were pastoralists and led a nomadic life. They kept cattle, sheep, and goats.
- The kwavi maasai lived a settled life and grew crops like sorghum, finger millet etc.
- The masai also traded with other communities like kikuyu exchanging hides, millet and butter for beans, millet, tobacco and sugarcane.
- They had well established markets where goods would be exchanged.
- The masai were also iron workers and made spears, arrowheads, shields, ornaments.
- They also carried out raids on their neighbours to obtain wealth.
- Hunting was also carried out as a source of meat.
- Fishing was also practiced by some communities living near water bodies.
- Art and craft were also practiced by the masai.
- The masai also made honey wine.
- Among the masai, women milked and herded animals.

Qn. Describe the social, political and economic organization of Maasai.

THE NYAMWEZI.

- The Nyamwezi were among the first bantu immigrants into tanzania.
- They are believed to have come from Katanga region.
- Traditions claim they first settled in central Tanzania around tabora between ad 1000 and 1500.
- They have diverse origins and speak different dialects.
- They originally lived in small independent chiefdoms with no groupname.
- The name Nyamwezi (people of the moon) was given to them by the coastal arabs, who saw them coming from the direction of the new moon west.
- They were originally agriculturists fishermen, and supplemented their livelihood by raising livestock,
- Later the Nyamwezi took part in the long distance trade.
- They were never a fully united society. today, however, they think of themselves as one people. /this is because of their experience in the 19th century, including the impact of the long distance trade, the ngoni invasion and the work of important leaders like mirambo and nyungu yamawe.

ORGANISATION OF THE NYAMWEZI.

- Political organization.
- The Nyamwezi had no centralized political authority.
- They lived in small independent chiefdoms of about 200-300 people.
- These chiefdoms were bound together by ethnic associations; kinships and clan ties,
- The ruler of the chiefdom was called mutemi or ntemi.
- The position of the ntemi was hereditary since a son or a close relative to the ntemi succeeded him.
- The ntemi exercised political: religious and judicial authority over his subjects.
- He appointed a number of elders to assist him in various capacities for example counselors, priests and headmen.
- Prominent officials among these were the ritual officials (mgwawa), army commander (mutwala) information minister (kikoma) and the tax/revenue collector. (minile)
- All these were answerable to the ntemi.

- Some positions of the officials were hereditary.
- The ntemi was also assisted by a council of elders called wanyampala.
- The council was composed of old, experienced and knowledgeable leaders.
- The decisions of the council had to be respected by the ntemi.
- Militarily, the Nyamwezi had no standing army. Instead, chiefdoms had a small army whose commander would be appointed by the ntemi himself.
- In case of population explosion or succession disputes etc, chiefdoms would be split leading to the creation of new chiefdoms along clan ties.
- For easy administration, ntemiships were further divided into small political units headed by clan heads called gunguli.
- Social organization.
- The Nyamwezi were religious people who believed in a powerful god called likube.
- The ntemi was the religious leader of his people and was supposed to link them to their ancestors.
- He therefore performed rituals, functions and offered [prayers on behalf of his people.
- These prayers were for good yields, child birth and success in the battles.
- He was the fountain of honour in the society and received a lot of respect from his people.
- He could marry as many wives as he wanted.
- The ntemi was the final man in the judicial system and was the final court of appeal.
- The wellbeing of the land and the people was totally dependent on the chief's physical health and observance of special rituals.
- Land was highly valued and was communally owned by the clan and the lineage.
- They observed the royal regalia like shields, spears, a royal flier and drum which symbolized chiefly power.
- The family and the clan were very important social units among the Nyamwezi.
- They were united by strong kinship ties and common ancestry/origin.
- Marriage was polygamous although there were monogamous homes.
- There were also diviners and medicine men called ufumi who treated the sick.
- Respect to elders was highly expected of the youth among the Nyamwezi.
- By 1850, expansion of trade had affected the Nyamwezi political organization.

- It promoted the growth of larger units and introduced new ways of enforcing authority.
- This later produced powerful Nyamwezi chiefdoms like the Nyungu, Yamawe and Mirambo.
- They managed to unite the numerous Nyamwezi chiefdoms into more or less centralized states of Urambo and Ukimbu.

Economic organisation.

- At first the Nyamwezi were farmers and grew crops like millet, sorghum, potatoes, yams etc.
- This food was collected as a form of tax.
- They established national food stores (granaries) that were directly under the Ntami.
- This food bank fed the Ntami's body guards, members of his court and other people outside the court in case of hunger and famine.
- The Nyamwezi observed the new crop harvest ceremony.
- They were also pastoralists and kept animals like cattle, sheep, goats etc.
- Fishing was also carried out from river Pangani, Igombe, Ugalla, and Lake Tanganyika.
- They were hunters especially of elephants for ivory and meat.
- There was division of labour/specialization, enabling men to be free and concentrate on developing their skills in fishing, raiding, iron working etc.
- Iron working was also carried out and they made spears, arrowheads, pangas, knives etc.
- Pottery and craft making were also common among the Nyamwezi.
- From the 18th century, the Nyamwezi got involved in the long distance trade and controlled the central trade route.
- They also made trade contacts with the coast and traded in ivory, salt, iron, and slaves.
- They usually moved in caravans which led to the coast, Katanga and Buganda.

- During these trade contacts, the Nyamwezi provided the most skilled porters hence porterage became a full time business occupation.
- Qtn, **Describe the social, political and economic organization of the Nyamwezi empire.**

THE KIKUYU.

- The kikuyu are closely related to the other eastern bantu groups.
- Their ancestors are said to have migrated to the taita hill area.
- Traditions of the kikuyu says that they moved from there directly into the Kenyan highlands.
- By the 16th century, the kikuyu had settled in mbere and chukka areas.
- Due to population growth and pressure from the galla, they were forced more westwards. other kikuyu had settled on the mwea plains at ithanga.
- In the 18th century, there was great increase in the population and the kikuyu migrated again. they went west to othaya and aguthi in nyeri, and north east to tetu and mathira. some also went to kiambu and then to nyandarua.
- In the course of their migration, the kikuyu met various groups like the gumba and the athi from whom they adopted skills like hunting, bee keeping, iron working, and pottery.
- They also adopted a number of cultural practices from the athi, including circumcision, clitoridectomy (female circumcision) and the age set system.

ORGANISATION OF THE KIKUYU.

Political organization:

- The kikuyu had a centralized system of administration based on clans.

- The family was the smallest political unit and each family was headed by the family head.
- The families within each clan belonged to the local territorial unit called the mbari.
- A council of elders headed by the muramati led the mbari.
- The office of the muramati was not hereditary but was entrusted to an experienced elder.
- The muramati performed the judicial functions in the Maasai society.
- The Maasai had no standing army. In case of aggression, the youth would be mobilized to defend the society.
- Their society was based on egalitarianism since laws were passed and justice was administered by those in authority.
- Criminal acts were punished through fines, corporal punishments and banishments among others.
- After circumcision, boys become junior warriors.
- They advanced to the status of senior warriors and junior elders within time.
- Another important person was the muthamati who was the leader of a territorial unit called riika.
- Land was communally owned and was allocated by the muthamati.
- The junior warriors did duties like clearing land and defending villages from wild animals.
- Social organization.
- Socially, the family and the age sets were important features.
- The age set system consisted of members who had been circumcised together.
- Circumcision was important among both the boys and girls among the Kikuyu.
- The riika was important in sense of brotherhood and unity.
- Milk and butter were used as a store of wealth.
- They believed in the supreme being called Ngai /Nkai.
- Witches and evil spirits were seen as causes of epidemics.
- Evil spirits were driven out in a ceremony of beating drums and blowing horns.
- Senior warriors would marry and after circumcision of their first child, they became senior elders.
- Departed ancestors and spiritual leaders were also respected and sacrifices were offered.
- The Kikuyu also respected elders in the community.
- The warrior age group defended the community.

- Economic organization.
 - Agriculture was an important economic activity among the kikuyu.
 - They mainly grew crops like millet,beans,sorghum,maize,yams,peas etc.
 - They were pastoralists and they kept animals like goats,cows etc.
 - Fishing was also carried out by communities living near water bodies to supplement their diet.
 - They traded with the maasai and the akamba in items like baskets,iron implements etc.
 - Iron working was also practiced.they made hoes ,spears etc.
 - Hunting wild animals and food gathering were also practiced.
 - Bee keeping was also common.
 - They had well established market centres for example at kiambu,karatina etc.
- Pottery was also an important activity among the kikuyu.

THE WANGA KINGDOM.

- The wanga kingdom was the only centralized monarchy in the area of modern kenya.
- The founders of the wanga area the group of bahima from the Chwezi empire.
- They moved from western Uganda eastwards into kenya and settled at imanga hill,by about 1500ad
- The Chwezi however,were not the earliest or the only centres in this territory.
- The area was inhabited by different groups of people but the largest single group was the luyia,who were of the bantu origin.others included the Kalenjin and the maasai.
- By 1750, the luo had also moved into the area.it was thus a melting pot of different cultures but the bantu culture was dominated.
- Between 1550 and 1650, new settlers arrived,led by wanga.they settled in the territory peacefully.wanga united the five clans;the buka,runga,shikao,kolwe and shitsetse clans.the latter became the traditional ruling clan.the abashitsetse dynasty replaced the hima dynasty in the 17th century.

ORGANISATION OF THE WANGA.

Political organization:

- The wanga kingdom was a centralized monarchy under a king known as nabongo.

- Nabongo had absolute powers:he could appoint officials and dismiss them at his own will.
- He also made military decisions and had power over life and death.
- The king's position was hereditary upon the death of the king he could be succeeded by his eldest son or close relative.
- Items of regalia like shields,spears and drums were used to symbolize the king's authority and to give him prestige.
- The king was helped by the various officials and administration.these included the prime minister who was the head of the hierarchy of chiefs.he also advised the king and ensured that his policies were implemented by his officials.
- There was a council of elders which advised the king on matters of administration,security and justice.
- The kingdom was divided into five clans, which made the administration.
- Each clan was headed by a member of the main clan.
- The clan leaders played an advisory role, collected taxes AND MAINTAINED justice,law and order.
- The judicial system,the king judged major offences while minor crimes were dealt with by the chiefs.
- The kingdom had a strong standing army for the purpose of defending and expanding its territory.
- The chiefs had the role of mobilising able-bodied men to serve in the army.the army commander was appointed by the king.
- The army used spears,bows,arrows for defence and later guns obtained from the swahili and arab traders.

Social organization:

- The luyia lived in small villages grouped into administrative units.
- Each village consisted of about 500 members and was under a chief who had political and religious powers.
- Politically,he was an administrator and a judge.
- He also ensured that taxes were collected and law and order were maintained.
- His religious role included presiding over cultural or religious ceremonies.

- Clans were an important part of the luyia society.
- Clans were made up of agesets. youth of the same age group were initiated at the same time.
- Marriage within the same clan was forbidden because clan members were referred to as relatives.
- The luyia believed in the existence of a supreme being, whom they referred to as (WERE)
- They also had lesser gods and spirits that they worshipped.
- They communicated with “were”. through the spirits of their ancestors and with the help of the diviners.
- Shrines were built for worship and offering sacrifices to the gods.
- The king and his chiefs presided over various religious and cultural rituals such as coronation, cleansing and harvest rituals.
- Communal work was encouraged among the wanga. activities like farming, building as well as ceremonies like initiation, marriage and funeral rites involved the whole community.
- The villages and clans created a sense of unity among the people.
- The wanga used to wear cow and goat skins.
- There was division of labour, with the men clearing land, building houses and granaries, hunting and fishing, while the women did the cultivation, made beer and took care of the homesteads.

Economic organization:

- Cultivation was the main economic activity among the wanga.
- Crops like cereals, potatoes, beans and other vegetables were grown.
- Cattle, sheep and goats were reared and poultry were kept.
- Fishing was also carried out to supplement on their diet.
- Other activities included hunting for meat and skins. elephants were hunted for ivory at the coast. this became an important activity in the 19th century as a result of the high demand for ivory at the coast.
- They carried out trade with their neighbouring societies such as the masa: exchanging foodstuffs and ivory for cattle and iron products.

- They also traded with the coastal swahils and arsb traders bringing in guns,glassware and other manufactured.
- The wanga on the other hand exported ivory and slaves.
- The luyia home were also reach in items like pots,baskets,stools,grindingstones and calabashes which made them self sufficient
- Qtn.how was the wanga kingdom of the luyia organized in the 19th century.

THE ACHOLI:

- The Acholi lived in northern Uganda.they came into existances when the river-lake nilotics left pubungu and moved into Acholi land were they met the madii and the okebo who had come from the west.yhey merged peacefully with the river-lake nilotics and anew society emerged.
- by 1700, the luo-speaking people had come into existence.

ORGANISATION OF THE ACHOLI.

Political organization:

- The Acholi society was made up of several independent chiefdoms. these were small and kinship based.
- Each of these chiefdoms were established by the collection of clans linkef by acommon loyalty to aparticular chief(rwot)and hisfamily.
- The same family provided the chiefs from the generation to generation.
- The rwot had political and religious duties.
- Each of the chiefdoms had its own rituals and regalia such as spears,drums,shields and stools.they were used in various ceremonies such as the coronation,and were symbols of the chiefs authority.
- Although the chiefdoms were independent,they had acommon structure and style of government.this showed the influence lwo cultures and ideas.

- At the top of their administration was the rwot.
- He was advised by a council of elders chosen from the major clans.
- They advised on matters of security, justice and so on.
- The rwot appointed village chiefs called jago who collected taxes and tributes for the rwots.
- The jago administered territories on behalf of the rwot, ensured law and order and maintained security.
- During times of war, they mobilized young men to fight.

Social organization:

- The family was the social basic unit of the Acholi society.
- A collection of families made up a clan.
- The clan was made up of the several lineages or family lines.
- Each clan had its own chief.
- The Acholi believed in one supreme creator, Lubanga, also called Jok-Lubanga.
- They also worshiped lesser gods.
- It was believed that the rwots had links with the ancestors. This is why he had divine authorities over his people.
- The Acholi believed that the souls of the dead continued to live as animals. The result was that many animals were feared.
- Sacred places of worship were established. At these shrines, sacrifices were made to the gods.
- The Acholi believed in evil spirits who could bring both good luck and misfortunes.
- Sacrifices were offered to appease them so that no harm would come to the people.
- They carried out several social activities that helped to give unity to the people.
- Traditional dancing was of great importance. Ceremonies to celebrate harvest, marriage and funeral rites were marked with dancing and feasting.

Economic organization:

- The Acholi were primarily mixed farmers and this made them quite self-sufficient.

- They grew a variety of crops, but mainly cereals like millet and sorghum, peas, beans, bananas were grown as well.
- Cattle were also important as bride price and for granting favours or rewards to the chiefs.
- Livestock rearing was practiced, cattle being kept to provide meat and milk to diversify their diet.
- Goats, sheep and hens were also kept.
- Hunting was important among the Acholi as a social event, especially for the young men.
- At the same time, hunting provided food and skins.
- Fishing was carried out by communities living near rivers and lakes.
- There was division of labour whereby men did the hunting, fishing and clearing of farm land while the women did most of the cultivation.
- Raids were also an important source of wealth. The clans organized raids in order to obtain cattle.
- They also carried out trade with the neighbouring societies like the Langi, Banyoro, Madi and the Sudanese.
- Qtn. describe the way of life of the Acholi during the 18th century.

THE LANGI

- The Langi are a mixture of two separate peoples and cultures. The two-speaking peoples came to the area from the north. They found the Ateker speaking cultivators already in the area.
- Slowly, the Ateker –speakers lost their own language and began to speak Luo, but they kept their own dialect. The Langi never became fully Luo and so Langi society continued to have within it elements of the old Ateker culture.
- This was different from other areas such as Acholi where Luo culture came to dominate completely.

ORGANISATION OF THE LANGI

Political organization:

- The Langi did not have a centralized system of administration just like the Acholi.
- The clan or Ateker, as it was called, was the most important political unit.
- Each of the clan had a distinct name.

- Each clan was headed by a clan head referred to as arwot.
- One important function of the rwot was to lead the clan into battle. arwot only became important if he was particularly a good military leader.
- By the 19th century, the role of the rwot in military campaigns had been reduced. the langi appointed a military leader known as witong who organized the military campaigns of the langi
- The rwot had judicial powers and kept items of regalia such as spears and stools.
- Among the langi, a great deal of power was held by the lineage leader.
- Each clan was divided into lineages. a lineage was made up of a number of families.
- Each family and lineage had a leader who represented their interests in the rwot's court.
- The lineage leader maintained law and order and presided over religious and cultural ceremonies for families and the lineage.
- The elders were respected as custodians of wisdom and they gave advice to the lineage leader.

Social organization:

- The langi society was based on clans
- The lowest unit in the clan was the family and this formed the basic social unity.
- The head of each family played an important role in presiding over cultural ceremonies and in keeping law and order.
- They believed in the existence of a supreme god, lubanga.
- They prayed to him through ancestral spirits. spirits were both good and bad.
- The langi offered sacrifices to keep their good will.
- They built shrines and offered various sacrifices to the gods and the spirits.
- The spirits of the dead were believed to have the power to cause disorder if they were not appeased.
- The langi also feared and respected animals because they were thought to be different forms for their ancestors.
- Witchcraft was prohibited and those who engaged in it and so tried to use the spirits to fight against fellow humans were executed.

- There was also division of labour whereby men did the hunting, fishing, cattle rearing and construction of houses while cultivation was the duty of the women.

Economic organization:

- the langi were mainly pastoralists. they kept cattle for meat, milk, hides and payment of bride price.
- They also kept goats, sheep and other domestic animals.
- They grew crops like millet, sorghum, simsim, groundnuts and sweet potatoes.
- Those who lived near water bodies carried out fishing to supplement their diet.
- The langi were iron workers. they made tools like hoes, axes and pangas to facilitate their farming activities.
- Hunting was also carried out as a social event and also as a source of food and hides.
- The langi also traded with their neighbours for example they exchanged their iron products for foodstuffs from bunyoro.
- **Qn.** Describe the social, political and economic organization of the langi in the 19th century.

CHAPTER 8: TRADE IN EAST AFRICA

THE LONG DISTANCE TRADE IN EAST AFRICA.

- The long distance trade was the trade over the long distance to and from the interior of east Africa.
- It was also known as the 19th century pre-colonial caravan trade.
- This trade developed in the first half of the 19th century.

FACTORS FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG DISTANCE TRADE.

- The profitability of the trade attracted many traders leading to its development.
- High demand for local items like ivory, slaves, gold, iron etc.
- The high demand for foreign products like guns, beads, cloth, by the interior chiefs and people.
- The surplus production of food also enabled the trade to occur.
- The arrival of Seyyid Said and his involvement in the trade led to its development.
- He set up clove plantations that needed slave labour hence increasing demand for slaves.

- He also organized personal trade caravans into the interior.
- Seyyid said protected the caravans by allowing them to carry his flag.
- The increasing demand for the interior goods by the coastal people made the Nyamwezi move long distance to for the items of trade.
- The introduction of guns improved security for the traders.
- Role played by the banyans who financed the caravans into the interior.
- Presence of organized societies in the interior like the Yao, Nyamwezi, Akamba etc.
- Role played by African chiefs like Tippu-tip, Mirambo and Muteesa I etc who organized the trade.
- East Africa was the only reliable source of slaves following the abolitions of slave trade in West Africa.
- Co-operation between the coastal people and interior also led to its development.
- Deficiency in natural resources by some societies like the Nyamwezi and the Kamba who lived in areas with poor soils and little rain.
- The development of trade routes which eased penetration into the interior.
- The introduction of cowrie-shells which made transaction easy.
- Later, the minting and use of coins by some coastal towns further made transactions easy.
- Specialization permitted men to trade while women looked after the home.
- Some societies had skills that enabled them to produce superior goods which had unlimited goods.
- The growth and development of Zanzibar as a slave market centre.
- The evolution and development of Kiswahili language made business transactions easy.
- Exhaustion of trade items at the immediate hinterland resulted into long journeys into the interior.
- Presence and influence of Islam which cemented unity and brought about truthworthiness among the traders.
- The good and favourable climate which was ideal for business and agriculture.
- Some tribes were strategically located giving an edge in their trade for example the Nyamwezi.
- The flat nature of lands eased the movement of traders for example the Nyamwezi land.

- Hospitality given to the foreigners /arabs by the interior people and chiefs.
 - Presence of small scale industries like the weaving, curving and iron smelting that produced goods for sale.
 - The peace, stability and security in places like Buganda favoured the development of their long distance trade.
 - Some societies produced goods in excess enabling them to have surplus for sale.
 - The establishment of plantations in Mauritius, Madagascar etc by the French increased demand for slave labour.
 - The interclan wars and raids caused displacement that resulted into easy capture of slaves.
 - Existence of slaves as porters who carried goods from the interior to the coast.
 - Natural calamities like drought, famine etc favoured societies to move long distances.
 - **Qn. What factors led to the development of the Long distance trade.**
- Map.

ORGANISATION OF THE LONG DISTANCE TRADE

- This was the trade over the long distances to and from the interior.
- The major participants from the interior were the Nyamwezi, Kamba, Yao, Chagga, Baganda etc.
- While participants from the east African coast included the Arabs, Swahili and the Zanzibaris.
- These traders travelled in caravans of 100 and 1000 men.
- The caravans carried the Sultan's flag for security reasons.
- Caravans were sent into the interior from Zanzibar and other coastal towns.
- They were armed and included porters and medicine men.
- This trade was mainly carried out during the dry season in order to dodge the wet season.
- Due to long distances, regular stopping places with facilities for storage of goods as well as supplies were developed.
- The trade was initially conducted on a barter system where goods were exchanged for goods.
- With time, Cowrie-shells were introduced to act as currency and ease transactions.
- These were later replaced by coins minted by some coastal towns.
- The major means of transport was by human beings /human portage.

- The Nyamwezi provided the most skilled porters. The Nyika and Makaranga also acted as porters.
- Exports from the interior were slaves, ivory, iron works, gold, wax, hides, copper, ostrich feathers, rhinoceros horns, honey, salt etc.
- While imports from the coast were the beads, guns, mirrors, plates, glassware, pans, swords, brass, Persian cloths etc.
- African chiefs in the interior provided security to the traders along the trade routes.
- Most of the items in east Africa exported were got from the interior.
- For example slaves were acquired through raiding or selling domestic servants.
- The trade involved taxation since negotiations were also made with local chiefs and rulers like Mirambo, Tippu-tipu, Muteesa I over a wide area.
- Gold was got from the ancient kingdom of Mwenemutapa.
- Ivory was obtained by hunting elephants.
- There were agents and bases in the interior and at the coast forexmple Ujiji, Bagamoyo, Tabora, Unyanyembe etc.
- It took months or years collecting items in the interior to take to the coast.
- The Banyans financed the Arabs and Swahili traders and charged them interest.
- The medium of communication in this trade was Kiswahil.
- There were three well defined trade routes to the interior; the Northern, Central and the Southern route.
- The northern route ran from Pangani, Tanga and Mombass inland to Kilimanjalo area and to the Eastern shores of lake Victoria and through Kenya as far as Mount Elgon.
- This route mainly supplied ivory and was controlled by the Kamba.
- The central route ran from Bagamoyo inland to Tabora.
- This route was controlled by the Nyamwezi and it mainly supplied slaves and salt.
- The Southern route started from the Southern part of Tanzania (Lindi and Kilwa) through Malawi then to the ancient Mwenemutapa kingdom.
- This route was controlled by the Yao and mainly supplied gold obtained from Mwenemutapa.

- However, there was another less significant route of the Khartoumers which ran through the Nile valley.
- **Qn. Describe the organization of the Long distance trade in the 19th century.**

ROLE PLAYED BY THE AFRICAN SOCIETIES IN THE LONG DISTANCE

TRADE :

(a) ROLE PLAYED BY THE AKAMBA.

- The akamba were the most vigorous long distance trades in Kenya.
- They originally practised pastoralism especially in drier areas.
- Some agriculture was also practiced in the west of ukambani.
- Their ancestors obtained living from hunting in the least fertile soils.
- In the early 19th century, the akamba developed interests in the long distance trade.
- They developed vommercial contacts over awide area amongst the chagga,segeju,and on laikipia –masai and kikuyu.
- They cotrolled the northern route running fronn pangai to taita up to western shores of Lake Victoria.
- Since they were great hunters, the akamba mainly supplied ivory in the first half of the 19th century.
- They acted as middlemen between the coastal people and the interior traders.
- They acted as porters carrying goods to and from the v0ast.
- They were also herbalists who treated sick traders.
- They also acted as guides to the traders from the coast.
- The akamba also acted as interpretors to the traders
- They provided accommodation tonthe traders.
- They also provided food to the tradfers who passed through theirvland.
- Theyb also provided other trade items lik the ornaments, arrowsheds,etc which were highly demanded.
- They also provided marketbfor goods from the coast forexample glassware,metal ware,clothes ,beads etc.
- The success of their trading activities inspired other tribes to join the trade.

- By the middle of the 19th century, huge Kamba caravans were developed by chief kivoi of kitui who was the most enterprising caravan leader.
- These caravans mainly carried ivory, rhino horns, honey, tobacco, arrow heads bee wax etc.
- The akamba provided security to the trade caravans crossing the nyika.
- Lator, the akamba became very rich as a result of their involvement in the trade for example chief kivoi.
- However, in the late 19th century, opposition to hunting and trading parties grew and chief kivoi was killed near Mout Kenya.

ROLE PLAYED BY THE YAO.

- Originally, the Yao lived around Lake Malawi where they practiced agriculture.
- They were the major long traders in southern Tanganyika.
- They were the first to develop long distance trade in southern Tanganyika.
- By the 19th century, the Yao had started to trade in cloth with the Arab traders from the coast.
- As a result of violent disruptions that allowed the Ngoni invasion, the Yao began raiding for slaves.
- As the demand for slaves increased at the coast especially at Kilwa, the Yao became the chief suppliers of slaves.
- In the early years of the 19th century, slaves were acquired by trade but later force was applied.
- The Yao mainly controlled the southern route which started from Kilwa and Lindi through Lake Malawi up to Mwenemutapa Kingdom.
- They organized and sent their own caravans to the coast.
- Coastal traders who travelled in land came mainly as clients of the Yao chiefs.
- The Yao obtained guns, beads and glass in exchange for slaves.
- Among the Yao, women were valued more highly than men. The majority of slaves were men.
- The love for travel among the Yao led to the increase in the volume of trade.
- After sale and disposal of slaves at the coast, porters were paid off and fresh caravans organized.
- With the abolition of slave trade, the volume of Yao trade declined.
- They acted as middlemen between the coastal traders and the tribes of the interior.

- They also provided security to the traders along the southern route.
- They employed swahili secretaries to make it easier to carry on business and diplomatic communications with the trader.
- The yao also supplied food stuffs and facilities to the traders.

ROLE PLAYED BY THE NYAMWEZI.

- The Nyamwezi occupied central Tanzania, parts of Rwanda, Burundi, and Congo Zaire.
- Originally they were cattle keepers, cultivators and also fishermen. Towards the end of the 19th century, cattle keeping became less important.
- They became involved in the long distance trade with the Arabs at coast.
- They became one of the most prominent long distance traders.
- They were the main suppliers and organisers of caravan porters in the 19th century.
- They acted as middlemen connecting the interior to the coast.
- They supplied the coast with salt from Vinza and copper from Katanga.
- They also provided trade items like glassware, metal ware, clothes, beads etc.
- They had their own caravan travelling to the coast by the 19th century.
- The caravans stayed at the coast trading and farming until the next dry season.
- The Nyamwezi also set up trading posts for example at Tabora and Ujiji.
- Tabora became their important trading centre from which they moved westwards to Ujiji and northwards to Buganda.
- Some rulers became very rich because of this trade for example Mirambo, Nyungu ya Maw and Msiri.
- In the late 19th century, the Nyamwezi were rivaled by the Swahili and they lost their middlemen position in the trade.
- They acted as guides to the traders using the central route.
- They controlled the central route that ran from Dar-es-Salaam to Lake Tanganyika and ending into Congo.
- They provided food to the traders along the central route.
- They acted as interpreters to the traders. They also imposed taxes on traders passing through the central route.
- They provided land to the traders for agriculture.

- The Nyamwezi also carried out raids for slaves.

Qn. Explain the role played by the two following societies in the organization of the long distance trade;

(a)Akamba

(b)Nyamwezi

(c)Yao.

ROLE PLAYED BY SEYYID SAID IN THE LONG DISTANCE TRADE.

- By 1840, seyyid said had transferred his capital from Oman to Zanzibar
- Trade was extremely important to Sayyad said.
- He levied tax of 5% on all goods that were traded through Zanzibar and its possessions to the mainland.
- He encouraged Arab penetration in the interior of east Africa.
- He signed commercial treaties with the interior chiefs like fundikira, mirambo, and msiri.
- He organized personal caravans into the interior of east Africa.
- He allowed them to use his flag for security purposes.
- He set up clove plantations in Zanzibar that needed slave labor hence increasing the demand for slaves.
- Sayyad said invited the Indian banyans to settle in Zanzibar.
- They provided the finance for the trading caravans into the interior and they exchanged their interests,
- The banyans were also used to collect customs duties on the trade items.
- Sayyad said also took part in the 19th century slave trade in east Africa.
- Unfortunately, Sayyad said died in 1856.

Qn. Describe the role played by Seyyid Said in the long distance trade

DECLINE OF THE LONG DISTANCE TRADE.

- Towards the end of the 19th century, this trade started to decline due to
- The death of outstanding leaders who had promoted the trade like mirambo, Nyungu yam awe, Muteesa I in 1884 led to its decline.
- Scarcity and exhaustion of some trade items like ivory made many traders to abandon the trade.

- Stiff competition among the communities involved gradually killed the trade.
- For example, some traders like charge and the akimbo were forced out of the trade by the Arabs.
- Poor transport and communication network in the interior discouraged many traders leading to the decline of trade etc.
- The coming of Christian missionaries and their persistent anti-slave campaigns also led to its decline.
- The abolition of slave trade in east Africa also led to the decline of the trade since slaves were one of the main trade items.
- Long distance trade was discouraged by the colonialist who had no room for it
- The British anti-slave movements also sabotaged the smooth running of the trade.
- The anti-slave treaties also gradually affected this trade for example Moresby treaty, (1822), the herman treaty (1845), the Zanzibar treaty (1873) etc.
- The construction of the railway line provided an alternative to head porterage hence reducing demand for slave porters.
- Insecurity created by the rugaru and the maviiti bandits scared away many traders especially along the central and the southern route.
- The ngoni invasion of the southern Tanganyika disrupted the trade activities along the central and southern route which negatively affected the trade.
- The introduction of legitimate trade as an alternative to slave trade also led to its decline.
- The introduction of guns improved security in the interior which reduced slave raids.
- Inter-tribal wars in the interior created insecurity which scared away the traders/
- Communication problems or language barrier also hindered transactions in the interior of east Africa.
- Hostile tribes like the Maasai who attacked the traders also negatively affected the trade.
- Arab interference in the political affairs of some states forcing chiefs to fight against them.
- Tropical disease like malaria, sleeping sickness, small pox etc.
- Discouraged trade in the interior of east Africa.
- Fierce wild animals like lions, leopards, etc. also scared away traders.

- Heavy taxation by the interior and coastal chiefs discouraged many traders leading to the decline of the trade.
- The withdraw of the banyans who had lost the money in the trade either because their debtors were killed in the interior or had jumped payment.

Qn What factors led to the decline of the Long distance trade in the 2nd half of the 19th century.

EFFECTS OF THE LONG DISTANCE TRADE.

- The long distance trade had both positive and negative effects on the people of east Africa.
- Positive effects:**
- Many people who participated in this trade became rich, especially the chiefs and rulers.
 - It led to the development of political units based on military and economic power for example marimbo's empire, nyungu yamawe empire etc.
 - Some rulers expanded their territories to gain control of trade, routes, market places, places of production for example kabalega expanded southward to katwe to control the salt deposits.
 - It led to their introduction of new commodities like guns, beads, clothes etc in the interior of east Africa.
 - The introduction of manufactured goods led to the decline of traditional skills and industries.
 - It led to the prominence of some states like the Nyamwezi, yao and the akamba.
 - It led to the rise of strong statesmen like mirambo, kivoi, nyungu yam awe, msiri etc.
 - States with access to guns were able to dominate those without them for example Buganda.
 - The caravan routes paved way for the coming of explorers, missionaries and colonialists.
 - It led to the growth of towns in the interior of east Africa for example ujiji, bagamoyo and tabora etc.
 - Caravan routes were later developed into roads and railway lines.
 - The desire to end slave trade led to the coming of Europeans in the 19th century.
 - It offered an alternative livelihood to the akimbo whose farming activities had been affected by drought and poor soils.
 - It strengthened the link between the east Africans and the outside world.
 - It led to the introduction of new crops like rice, maize, wheat, bananas, green paper etc in the interior of east Africa.

- It led to the introduction of cowrie-shells and coins to facilitate transactions.
- It led to the introduction of Arabic style of building flat topped houses in the interior of east Africa.
- Arabic culture was introduced in the interior for example their ways of dressing and eating habits.
- It also led to the spread of Swahili culture and language in the interior of east Africa.

Negative effects:

- it increased inter-tribal wars in the interior due to the high demand for slaves.
- It led to heavy depopulation due to massive slave raids for example in southern Tanganyika under the yao.
- There was much devastation and destruction of property and crops due to the wars and the raids of slaves.
- It led to the detribalization and deculturalisation due to the increased wars and slave raids.
- It led to the loss of confidence in the traditional rulers and customs due to the slave raids.
- It led to famine since agriculture was disrupted by the slave raids.
- It led to the emergence of social misfits like the rugaruga and the maviti who terrorized southern Tanganyika.

Qn. Explain the effects of the 19th century Long distance trade.

THE RISE OF MILITARY STATES IN EAST AFRICA.

MIRAMBOS EMPIRE.

- Mirambo was born around 1830s in Nyamwezi land to the ntemi chiefs at a time when the long distance trade was booming.
- He spent his early years as a captive of the tuta ngoni in bugomba.
- While in captivity, his future career was shaped as he learnt the ngoni military tactics.
- It is these tactics that he later used to build formidable military force that he used to build the Urambo Empire.
- This army included 500 well-trained, well paid and well-armed ruga-ruga mercenaries as well as 7000 other (non professionals) warriors.
- This army became the basis of his power and influence in nyamweziland.

- The ruga –ruga had acquired the ngoni military tactics like the cow horn formation using the assegai etc.
- With these, he was able to conquer and absorb people into Bisurambo Empire.
- The captured male youth were added to his army, while the female recruits were married to his soldiers.
- During war times, mirambo personally led the arm into the battle fields which boosted the morale of the worriers.
- He also highly paid his soldiers and worriers which gave them morale to fight.
- He equipped his army with guns acquired from the Arabs and the swahil traders.
- Between 1860 and 1870, he carried out extensive conquest against the vinza and the tongure.
- During the same period he annexed,nyaturu,Sukuma,Burundi,kanongo,and iramba etc.
- He started off as a ruler of a small chiefdom called ugowe in the 1860s which belonged to his farther.
- Lator,mirambo inherited his mother's chiefdoms of uliankuru.
- He set up his base at urambo(named after him)and this became yhe name of his empire.
- By 1876, his capital(urambo)was only rivaled in power only unyanyembe(tabora)as commercialcenter under the Arab control.

Qn. Explain how Mirambo was able to build his empire.

FACTORS FOR THE RISE AND EXPANSION OF MIRAMBOS EMPIRE.

- Trade helped mirambo to extend his power and influence for example by 1880, he was in control of all the major trade routes that traversed his country.
- He controlled the whole Nyamwezi trade and thus impose taxes on traders passing through his territories.
- Mirambos empire was also able to expand because of weak neighbors like the vinza,Sukuma and samba.
- The Nyamwezi themselves lived in small chiefdoms that were weak and disorganized hence easy to conquer.
- Mirambos own personality was also major factor in the rise of his empire.
- He was atall,muscular,courageous,ruthless,soft spoken and charismatic military leader.
- He was also visionary and knew what he wanted and therefore strove to a\chieve it.

- He absorbed and conquered people into Nyamwezi society and forced them to pay tributes and recruited some into the army.
- He also placed and conquered district under his officials for effective administration.
- He carried out constant raids which ensured constant source of revenue.
- Mirambo also forced neighboring chiefdoms to pay allegiance to the Nyamwezi society.
- He often sought respect from those using his territory for example he closed routes to Arab traders when they refused to do this and only reopened them when they sought for peace. He was a man of vision who sought diplomatic friendship with other African leaders like Mutesa I, Tippu Tip, Nyungu Yamawe, Isike etc.
- The empire also had good relationship with Europeans and Arabs which enhanced his personal image and enabled him to gain from their expertise.
- He even invited London missionary societies to open up mission stations in the area and even offered the land.
- In 1875, he signed peace treaties with the Arabs declaring trade routes open.
- He also had respect for the British especially the British consular Sir John Kirk who also in return respected him.
- The Nyamwezi were also hospitable people who welcomed foreigners into their land.
- Strategic of his empire also enhanced trade in Nyamwezi land leading to its development.
- The death of Marimbas father also made him heir to the kingdom hence a starting point in his leadership career.

Qn. What factors led to the rise and expansion of the Mirambo's empire.

DECLINE OF MIRAMBO'S EMPIRE.

- The empire faced several social, economic, political and military challenges that led to its decline.
- The empire lacked a solid foundation and effective administrative machinery.
- It consisted of separate chiefdoms with different organizations and traditional institutions.
- Therefore, the empire did not have effective central administration partly because Mirambo had allowed local chiefs to retain a lot of power.
- Therefore, the empire lacked total unity and social cohesion.

- The empire had become too big to be administered by one king hence leading to its disintegration.
- Some of his expedition's were totally disastrous for example the raids he made on Sukuma.
- He conflicted with the Arabs over trade and homage forced Mirambo to close the trade routes financially crippling the empire.
- Therefore, the decline of the Nyamwezi trade led to the collapse of the empire.
- Though Mirambo was highly feared, he was not always respected and successful.
- His diplomatic goodwill for example was not successful; with Mutesa I.
- The empire had been built on rather fragile base/foundation.
- He had built the empire around his personality; he over personalized the empire and without him, it was bound to collapse.
- His army of Ruguru was also not dependable since they kept on switching their loyalty and services depended on who paid them highly.
- They became a menace after his death, roving. And burning people's property forcing the Germans to take over the area.
- The empire was also engulfed in civil wars as the conquered states tried to break away.
- His chiefs were also weak and therefore could not effectively administer the empire.
- Some of Mirambo's expeditions were disastrous for example the raids he carried out on the Sukuma.
- His persistent slave raids made the missionaries interfere in the running of his empire.
- The death of Mirambo in 1884 left the empire shaky leading to its decline.
- He failed to establish a lasting administrative system that could survive after his death.
- His successor and half-brother Mpandashalo lacked the charisma, vision and courage of Mirambo.
- The freedom given to the vassal states allowed them to break away after the death of Mirambo.
- The increasing European interest in East Africa finally brought his empire to an end.

Qn. What factors led to the decline of Mirambo's empire.

SLAVE TRADE IN EAST AFRICA.

Definition;

- **Slave trade;** the buying and selling of human beings as items of trade.
- **Slavery;**the state of being enslaved.it is a system whereby some people are owned by others and are forced to work for others without being paid by the work they have done.
- It involves capturing, transporting of human beings who become the property of the buyer.
- Slave trade was one of the worst crimes against humanity'; it involved burning people's houses capturing them by force,flogging, chaining,and working long distances to the market.
- Once in the market, slaves were sold as you would sell cows,goats,hens and other commodities.
- The trade was started by Arabs who wanted labor for domestic use and for their plantations.however,they were later joined by Europeans.

HOW SLAVE TRADE WAS ORGANISED IN EAST AFRICA.

- Slave trade involves the buying, selling and transportation of human being as items of trade.
- The main actors in the trade were the arabs,europeans and the African chiefs.
- They all shared equal responsibility in the organization of this trade.
- In the interior, the Kamba,yao,Nyamwezi and the chaga were the main actors.
- African chiefs obtained slaves through the inter –tribal wars and raids on their neighbours.
- The key African chiefs in this trade were the nyungu ya mawe,muteesa 1,mirambo,tippu-tip etc.
- The means of exchange was barter system which involved the exchange of goods for goods.
- The trade had both imports and exports. the major imports being mirrors,guns,beads,clothes etc while the exports included slaves and ivory.
- Afro –Arab traders like tippu-tip also set up trading posts for slaves and ivory in the interior.
- Slave trade was organized on caravans under great cruelty and brutality.
- These caravans varied in sizes ranging from 50 -1000 men depending on the route taken. The caravans were tagged and guided with Sayyad said s flag for security purposes.
- They started their journey in dry season in order to dodge the wet season.
- They remained at the coast for about two to three years before moving back to the interior.

- The Arab traders would either purchase slaves from the chiefs or would brutal raids on villages.
- Traders followed specific routes for example the yao supplied slaves to the Arabs who followed the southern routes.
- Slaves were tied together with chains carrying huge elephant's trunks, bundles of clothes etc.
- When the caravans reached the coast, ivory and slaves would on spot one else they were shipped to the main market of Zanzibar. Pemba were the chief slave markets at the east African coast.
- Slaves were sold to the outside market like turkey, Oman and European countries.
- However, due to the harsh conditions, for every five slaves captured only would reach the destination.
- Most of the slaves died in the interior before reaching the coast.
- During Syedsaidtime, about 15000 slaves passed through Zanzibar annually.

Qn. How was Slave trade organized in the 19th century.

WHY SLAVE TRADE INCREASED IN EAST AFRICA.

- Slave trade involves the buying, selling and transportation of human beings as items of trade.
- On east Africa it was started by the coastal Arabs around ad 1000.it later increased in volume and size in the 18th century due to;
- The high demand for slaves in the Arab world to work as domestic servants.
- The high demand for cheap labor on the French plantations in the re-union and Mauritius.
- The increased for slave labor to work on the Portuguese plantations in Brazil.
- The abolition of slave trade in West Africa made east Africa the only reliable source of slaves.
- The primitive culture of some African societies which considered slave trade as a way of getting rid of criminals, witches and the destitute.
- The coming of more Arabs and Persians into east Africa between the 17th and mid-19th century led to increase in slave trade.
- The hospitality of Africans to foreigners like Arabs attracted more people who dealt in slave trade.
- Religious prejudice in the Arabia prohibited the use of Muslim brothers as slaves hence making east Africa the source of slaves.

- The absence of developed means of transport to use slaves to carry goods.
- The penetration of the Arabs into the interior led to increased raiding of slaves.
- The acquisitions of guns by interior chiefs made slave raiding easy hence leading to the increase in the volume of slave trade.
- The inter-tribal wars in the interior made raiding easy hence leading to the increase in the volume of slave trade.
- Development of trade routes eased the Arab penetration into the interior and acquisition of slaves.
- The high demand for foreign goods like guns by the interior chiefs who could only get them after exchanging with slaves.
- The profitability of the trade attracted many people leading to its increase.
- The decline in gold trade on the coast made traders to turn to slaves hence leading to increase in slave trade.
- Sayyad's settlement in Zanzibar in 1840 also led to the expansion of trade.
- He established clove plantations in Zanzibar which needed slave labor.
- The establishment of Zanzibar and Kilwa as slave markets also increased slave trade.
- The industrial revolution in Europe increased demand for raw-materials to feed the machines and yet these materials were to be produced by the slaves.
- At the peak of this trade, Zanzibar and Kilwa were exporting between 80,000 and 100,000 slaves annually.

Qn, What factors led to increased in Slave trade in east Africa in the 19th century.

EFFECTS OF SLAVE TRADE IN EAST AFRICA.

- Slave trade had both positive and negative effects on the people of east Africa.
- Negative effects.
- Slave trade created a period of un-certainty in east Africa as everyone throughout would be the next victim.
- It reduced the dignity of Africans by reducing them to mere goods.

- It brought great cruelty to large areas of east Africa due to the brutal raids.
- Many people were killed during the raids and others died on the way to the coast
- A lot of property destroyed and villages set ablaze during the raids ‘
- The raids caused misery and untold suffering among the local people.
- It led to the introduction of guns in the interior of east Africa,
- The wars led to the detribalization as many people were left homeless.
- Many people were also displaced as they attempted to escape the slave raids.
- It also led to depopulation in the interior since many people were killed during the raids.
- Tribal laws and customs were disrupted due to the constant raids.
- Slave trade led to underdevelopment because strong men were taken as captives.
- The raids and center raids created enmity between societies in the interior of east Africa.
- Crops were burnt and people abandoned their farms resulting into famine.
- It strengthened some large societies like Buganda since they had access to the guns.
- It also led to the decline of small societies due to the constant raids.
- It led to the loss of confidence in the traditional rulers and customs due to the slave raids.
- It led to the decline in local industries and craft due to the introduction of manufactured goods.
- Positive effects.
- African chiefs like mirambo, Tippu-tip and Nyungu Yamawe became rich and built large commercial empires using wealth from the trade.
- Swahili language and culture was spread into the interior of east Africa.
- Slave collection centers like Tabora, Ujiji and Zanzibar etc. developed into major towns .
- It made east Africa to be known in the outside world.
- It led to the coming of many Europeans to east Africa in order to benefit from slave trade.
- Islam, Christianity was introduced and spread because it preached against slavery.
- The trade also provided pretext for the colonization of east Africa.
- The slave caravan routes were later developed into roads and railway lines.
- The spread of Islam was slowed down because of the slave traders who were identified with it.

Qn. What were the effects of Slave trade to the people of East Africa?

THE ABOLITION OF SLAVE TRADE IN EAST AFRICA

Introduction.

- The abolition of slave trade in east Africa was spearheaded by the British government in the 18th century.
- The campaign was championed by leading humanitarians like William Wilberforce, Granville Sharp, Fowell Buxton, Thomas Clarkson.
- They formed the anti-slavery league which voiced their ideas through newspapers, public lectures, parliament etc.
- They had the support of the philosophers like Rousseau who opened up the evils of the slave trade hence called for its abolition.
- They also had support of the religious groups like the Quakers and the holy ghost fathers who preached against it.
- European explorers like Jacob Gerhardt drew the map of east Africa giving detailed geographical information about the interior.
- Why slave trade was abolished in east Africa.
- The role played by the humanitarians who regarded slave trade as evil hence calling for its abolition.
- Dr Livingstone's preaching helped to expose the evils of slave trade leading to its abolition.
- The industrial revolution in Europe led to the discovery of machines which rendered slave labor useless.
- The need for raw materials like cotton, rubber, coffee etc to feed the European industries called for more man power to produce the raw materials hence the abolition of slave trade.
- Africa was seen as a potential source of market for the European manufactured goods hence the need to abolish slave trade.
- The British navy also played an active role in the abolition of slave trade by patrolling the Indian ocean.
- The anti-slave agreements secured by Captain Fair Fox with Sayyad Said in 1822 helped to limit slave trade activities to the Arab world.
- Colonel Larikins also signed the treaty with Sayyad Said which cutoff the supply of slaves to the red sea and Arabia.

- Population increase in Europe made it useless to bring more people whose services were not need by this time.
- The abolition of transatlantic trade also influenced the abolition of slave trade in east Africa.
- The role played by Britain in persuading other nations to avoid slave trade also contributed to its abolition.

Qn. Why was Slave trade abolished in east Africa.

STEPS TAKEN TO ABOLISH SLAVE TRADE IN EASTY AFRICA.

- The abolition of slave trade was dictated by economic and humanitarian factors.
- The campaigns against slave trade were spearheaded by the Britain in the 18th century.
- In 1772, it became un constitutional to allow slavery in Britain.
- The leadinghumanitarians in the fight against slave trade included William Wilberforce, Grandville sharp ,Thomas fowell,clerkson.etc.
- They formed the anti-slavery league which voiced their ideas through the parliament,magzines and newspapers.
- In 1807, they forced the British parliament to make slave trade illegal for the British subjects.
- In 1815, theBritishnervy started patrolling the Indian ocean to check on the shipment of slaves.
- In 1817,the governor of Mauritius signed agreement with the ruler of madascar to stop the shipment of slaves from Mauritius to Madagascar.
- In 1822, the Moresby treaty was signed between Sayyad said and captain fair fox Moresby.
- This was to stop slave trade eitherIndia in east Africa.
- Slaves from east Africa were also not to be sent outsideSayyadsaid territory.
- In 1833, the state of slavery was abolished in all British controlled areas.
- In 1845, theherma ton treaty was signed between colonel larrikins and the sultan of Zanzibar.
- This was aimed at stopping of the export of slaves from Zanzibar to Oman and also limiting slave Dhows from moving northwards beyond Brava.
- From 1850, Christianitywas introduced to de-campaign slave trade.
- In 1871, commission of inquiry was sent from Britain to find out about the state of slave trade in east Africa.

- In 1873, the first treaty was signed between Sir Brittlefrère and the Sultan Bargash.
- This treaty closed the Zanzibar slave market.
- It also made slave trade illegal in all parts of the Sultan's domination.
- By 1876, Sultan Barghash freed all slaves and they were to enjoy the right of protection. By the 1889 treaty, which was signed by Khalif and the British, all persons entering the Sultan's territory after 1st November were to be free.
- In 1890, Zanzibar became a British protectorate.
- In 1879, slavery was abolished in Zanzibar and Pemba.
- With the coming of colonialism, infrastructures were developed to discourage slave trade.
- Legitimate trade was encouraged to help stop slave trade.
- By 1907, slavery had been abolished in all British controlled territories in East Africa.
- In 1921, complete abolition of slave trade was achieved when Britain took over Tanganyika as mandated territory.

Qn. Explain the steps taken in the abolition of slave trade in East Africa.

SUMMARY OF THE ABOLITION OF SLAVE TRADE IN EAST AFRICA.

Year	event/activity
• 1772	slavery was made unconstitutional in Britain
• 1807	slave trade was made illegal to all British subjects
• 1815	British Navy started patrolling the Indian Ocean
• 1817	the governor of Mauritius signed treaty with the ruler of Madagascar to
•	Stop the shipment of slaves from Mauritius to Madagascar
• 1822	Moresby Treaty was signed between Sayyad Said and Captain Fairfax
	Moresby
	It aimed at stopping slave trade with India at the East African coast
• 1833	slave trade was abolished in all British controlled areas
• 1845	the Herat Treaty was signed between Colonel Larikins and Herat

And the sultan of Zanzibar

it aimed at stopping slave trade between the east African coast and Oman

it also stopped the shipment of slaves beyond Brava

- 1850 Christianity was introduced to de campaign slave trade
- 1871 commission of inquiry was sent to find out about the state of slave trade

In east Africa

- 1873 the frère treaty was signed between sir brittlefrère and sultan baghash

It closed Zanzibar slave market

- 1876 the sultan freed all slaves in his main land territory of Zanzibar
- 1889 khalif signed an agreement with the British which made all people entering Zanzibar to be free
- 1890 Zanzibar became a British protectorate
- 1897 slave trade was abolished in Zanzibar and Pemba
- 1900 with the introduction of colonialism, infrastructure like the railway line

Were built to replace human portorage

Legitimate trade was introduced to replace slave trade

- 1907 slave trade had been abolished in all British controlled areas
- 1921 complete abolition of slave trade was achieved when Britain took

Over Tanganyika as mandated territory

PROBLEMS FACED BY BRITAIN IN THE ABOLITION OF SLAVE TRADE

- The profitability of the trade to the African chiefs and kings made it difficult to abolish.
- The Arabs and Swahili also found it profitable and hence could not abandon it.
- The absence of alternative sources of income to those engaged in it made it difficult for them to abandon the trade.
- There was lack of manpower to effectively patrol the entire east African coast.
- The anti-slave crusaders also lacked funds to facilitate the abolition process.
- The Indian Ocean through which the slaves passed was too wide to be effectively monitored.

- There was no political will and corporation on the part of some European countries for example Portugal
- Britain therefore single handedly shouldered the campaigns against slave trade in east Africa.
- Some slave traders used American flags to transport slaves to disguise themselves.
- Some trading activities wen unchecked along the Indianocean.
- Sometimes the slave dealers threw the slaves into the ocean whenever they met the anti-slavesquad.
- Most attention was put at the coast and little was done in the interior of east Africa.
- The weakness of the earlier slave treaties for example the Moresby treaty of 1822 which failed to stop slave trade.
- There was continued smuggling of slaves to the Arabworld despite efforts to end it.
- Sayyadsaidhimselfwas not willing to stop slave trade since he did not want to anger those involved in it.
- Even his successors like Majid were also reluctant to enforce the anti-slave treaties.
- Slavery its self was an acceptable African practice; hence many chiefs had no problem with it.
- The thick forest and wild animals in the interior threatened the few abolistionalists.
- Existence of harsh climatic conditions in the interior made work difficult for the abolishionalists.
- The abolishmentalsists also lacked geographical knowledge about the interior of east Africa.
- Language barrier also made the communication difficult between the slave dealers and the abolitionists.
- Hostile tribes like the nandi,yao, and the maasai also attacked the abolitiopnalists.
- Tropical disease like malaria also scared the abolitionists in the interior of eat Africa.
- The abolitionists did not make thorough resettlement programmers before the process kicked off for example there was noland, property. Or employment to the freed slaves.
- The Arab traders were well armed and could fight hence they feared the abolistionalists.

Qn. What problems were faced in the abolition of Slave trade in east Africa.

EFFECTS OF THE ABOLITION OF SLAVE TRADE

- The effects of the abolition were political, social and economic. Some were positive while others were negative.

Positive effects:

- Human dignity was restored and respected as people were no longer chained or starved
- It led to improvement in security since there were no more slave raids in the interior.
- It led to an increase in the population since there was no more human export.
- The inter-tribal wars that were fought to obtain slaves were minimized.
- Agriculture improved in the interior due to the improvement in the security.
- Former trade routes were later developed into proper communication lines.
- It also led to the improvement of transport and communication systems for example the construction of the Uganda railway.
- The coming of missionaries led to the introduction and spread of Christianity in the interior of East Africa.
- They also led to the development of legitimate trade in East Africa.
- Missionaries also opened up mission stations for freed slaves for example at Bagamoyo, Rabai.
- It led to the scramble and partition of East Africa as Europeans started acquiring colonies in East Africa.
- Local people hated their traditional rulers who had collaborated with the slave traders.
- Negative effects.
- The trade led to the coming of foreigners like missionaries and explorers which led to the independence of the East African countries.
- Societies which depended on slave raiding found it difficult to adjust to a new life.
- It also led to the loss of wealth and income to those who greatly depended on it.
- It also led to the decline of the slave trade states like Zanzibar and Nyamwezi.
- Former slave market like Zanzibar also lost wealth following the abolition of slave trade.

Qn, What were the effects of abolition of Slave trade in East Africa.

CHAPTER 9: EUROPE AND EAST AFRICA

- From the late 19th century there was a renewal of the European interest in Africa and later east Africa.
- Different groups of Europeans came to east Africa for example explorers, missionaries, and traders etc.
- Their coming was influenced by political, social and economic factors.

EUROPEAN EXPLORERS IN EAST AFRICA

- Explorers were European travelers who came to adventure or discover about the dark continent.
- They include, James Grant, Richard Burton, John Hanning Speke, Samuel Baker, Henry Mutton Stanley, David Livingstone etc.

REASONS FOR THE COMING OF EXPLORERS IN EAST AFRICA

- They came due to geographical and scientific curiosity for example they wanted to discover the source of the Nile.
- Some wanted to gain prestige and personal growth.
- They wanted to discover rivers in the interior for easy movements of the Europeans like the missionaries.
- They wanted to search for fertile land for agriculture in order to produce raw materials needed to feed the European industries.
- The profitability of trade at the east African coast might have attracted some explorers.
- Some came to stop the evil slave trade that was taking place in east Africa.
- Others like Dr. David Livingstone wanted to introduce and spread Christianity in the interior of east Africa.
- Explorers also wanted to open up commerce and trade in the interior of east Africa.
- They also wanted to discover the economic potential of east Africa like the mineral potentials.
- They wanted to discover and make a study about the African way of life, language and customs.
- They also wanted to make careful study about mountains and highlands in east Africa.
- They wanted to get areas to settle excess population from the European countries.
- Some explorers were imperialists and hence wanted to acquire colonies for their home countries.
- Others wanted to pave way for the colonization of east Africa.

Qn. Why did the European explorers come to east Africa

ACTIVITIES OF EUROPEAN EXPLORERS IN EAST AFRICA

- Explorers were European travelers who wanted to discover /adventure about the Dark Continent.
- In east Africa, they include Henry Mutton Stanley, Sir Albert Cook, Dr David Livingstone, John Speke, James Grant etc.
- In the course of their work, they discovered areas of great economic potential like the mineral areas.
- They also discovered areas of great strategic importance like the source of the river Nile.
- They discovered areas with [plenty of rainfall and fertile soils like the Kenyan highlands.
- They discovered the physical features of east Africa like mountain Rwenzori, Kilimanjaro etc.
- They discovered important routes like Bagamoyo to Tabora which opened the interior to the coast.
- Explorers like Jacob Erhardt drew the map of east Africa giving detailed geographical information.
- They also befriended African chiefs whom they met in the interior for example John Speke befriended King Rumanika of Karagwe. Henry Stanley visited Buganda and befriended Mutesa I.
- They encouraged European civilization in east Africa.
- They also encouraged missionary activities in east Africa.

Qn. Explain the activities of European explorers of east Africa.

ROLES PLAYED BY EXPLORES IN THE COLONISATION OF EAST AFRICA

- Explorers cleared the doubt of wrong impression about Africa as a dark continent which attracted European colonialists.
- They provided geographical information which aroused European curiosity about east Africa.
- They discovered the source of the river Nile which was of great importance to the colonialists.
- They also reported about the strategic economic importance of east Africa like river Nile and the coast which made countries to scramble for east Africa.
- They reported about areas with plenty of rainfall, fertile soils and minerals which attracted the European colonialists.

- Explorers discovered routes and navigable rivers which simplified the movement of future colonialists.
- They also discovered the physical features of East Africa for example the rivers, mountains, lakes etc which attracted the colonialists.
- Some explorers like Jacob Erhardt drew the sketch map of East Africa which not only attracted the colonialists but also guided them.
- Explorers like Dr. David Livingstone reported the danger of slave trade which attracted Europeans to come and abolish it hence creating a conducive environment for the colonialists.
- Explorers like Sir Samuel Baker served as colonial administrators like he became the governor of the equatorial province.
- Some of them built forts which were used as administrative centers / posts by the colonialists for example like Fort Patiko built by Sir Samuel Baker.
- They also provided information about the hostile and accommodative societies which helped the colonialists later to apply suitable methods.
- The success of their work led to the coming of the traders, missionaries and later the colonialists into East Africa.
- Some explorers like Henry Merton Stanley signed treaties with African chiefs on behalf of their societies like the RGS and their home governments.
- They befriended African chiefs for example Henry Stanley befriended Mutesa I and this friendship created a warm atmosphere and a collaborative for the later colonization of East Africa.
- Stanley persuaded Mutesa I to invite the missionaries and yet they were forerunners of colonialism.
- They called for legitimate trade which became the backbone of the colonial economy.
- They also called for civilization among the Africans which quickened the colonization of East Africa.

Qn. Explain the role played by the explorers in the colonization of East Africa

PROBLEMS FACED BY EXPLORERS IN EAST AFRICA

- They faced a problem of poor means of transport since there were no developed roads and railway lines.

- There was poor means of communication since they had no way of communicating back home.'
- Wild animals and thick forests limited the activities of the explorers in the interior.
- They lacked geographical knowledge about the interior of east Africa.
- They also suffered from harsh climatic conditions especially floods and prolonged drought.
- They also suffered from tropical disease like malaria, yellow fever etc since they did not have health facilities.
- They lacked supplies like food stuffs, freshwater, medicine etc from home.
- There was poor accommodation due to the poor housing facilities in the interior.
- Unfaithful porters who usually stole the properties of the explores.
- Some African societies like the Nandi and the masai which were hostile towards the whites including the explorer.
- Explorers also lacked funds to effectively carryout the activities.
- Language made common difficulties between the explorers and the local Africans.
- Geographical barriers like mountains,cliffs,rift valley etc affected the movement of the explores.
- Disagreements between the explorers themselves slowed their progress like Speke and grant disagreed on the question of the Nile and almost created enmity between them.
- It was very difficult themselves since the distance between the interior of the coast was long.

Qn. Explain the problems faced by European explorers in east Africa

EUROPEAN CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES IN EAST AFRICA

- Christian missionaries were a group of Europeans who came to east Africa with the purpose of spreading the gospel of Christ.
- Their coming into the east Africa was as a result of the revival of religious movements in Europe during the 18th century.
- By the 19th century, different missionary society had been formed and they started arriving in east Africa in the 2nd half of the 19th century.
- They include the church missionary society(CMS),white fathers,the university mission of central Africa(UMCA),the mill hill fathers,and the Verona fathers etc.

MOTIVES/REASONS FOR THE COMING OF MISSIONARIES IN EAST AFRICA.

- Since they were Christians, they wanted to spread Christianity among the peoples of east Africa.
- They also wished to check on the growing Islamic influence in east Africa.
- They also wished to stamp out slave trade and slavery in east Africa.
- In order to do this, the missionaries wished to promote legitimate trade as an alternative trade.
- Others came to pave way for the colonization of east Africa and therefore acted as imperial agents.
- Some came because they had been invited by some African chiefs like Muteesa I of Buganda invited the missionaries to his kingdom upon the advice of Muteesa.
- Others were encouraged by the reports of the early travelers and explorers about the east Africa.
- David Livingstone's writings and speeches in London encouraged many missionaries to come to east Africa.
- Some wanted to resettle and rehabilitate the freed slaves as a way of restoring human dignity.
- Others just had desire for exploration and adventure like Carl Reichenow.
- The improvement in the transport and communication network especially in the field of navigation could have led to the missionaries in east Africa.
- Some wanted to civilize the backward uncivilized Africans.

Qn. Why did Christian missionaries come to East Africa

ACTIVITIES OF EUROPEAN CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES IN EAST AFRICA

- They carried out evangelisation in order to spread Christianity to the local people.
- They built many churches and cathedrals where very many converged for prayers like Rubaga and Namirembe cathedrals.
- They de-campaigned slave trade and slavery to restore human dignity and integrity.
- In order to do this, they encouraged legitimate trade with the Africans.
- They also de-campaigned the African traditional religion and shrines referring to them as satanic and inferior.
- They also de-campaigned the African cultures and values referring to it as primitive and backwards.
- They built schools like Gayaza, Kings College Buddo, Namirembe collage etc to promote formal education.

- They set up technical vocational schools like Stmaries collage kisubi, Gayaza high school.
- They also promoted the writing of the African languages like Luganda and Kiswahili.
- They set up hospitals to improve African health for example mengo and rubaga hospital.
- They divided many people along religious lines for example during the political-religious wars in Buganda.
- They also built mission stations where they worked from like rabai mpya, Kampala and tabora.
- They helped in the development of social and economic infrastructures like roads and railway lines.
- They influenced the local leaders to collaborate with the white man who later claimed these territories like semei kakungulu, sir Apollo kagwa and nuwa mbuguta etc.
- They created political confusion in some areas in Buganda when they fueled religious wars the wangereza upto the wafaransa wangereza wars.
- After creating instability in Buganda, they called upon their home governments to come and take the areas.
- They also taught foreign languages to the local Africans like German, Latin, English, Swahili etc.
- They helped to translate scriptures to the local like craft translated the new testament bible into Kiswahili.
- They encouraged the use of better farming methods like the use of fertilizers, ox-ploughing, mulching etc.

Qn. Describe the activities of European missionaries in East Africa

ROLE PLAYED BY THE CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES IN THE COLONISATION OF EAST AFRICA

- Missionary groups that came to east Africa include the church missionary society, mill hill fathers, Verona fathers, and the Holy Ghost fathers etc.
- Their role in the colonization of east Africa was either direct or indirect.
- At first, they worked as religious people but later became agents of imperialism/colonialism in the following ways;

- Some missionaries forced African chiefs into signing of the treaties of protection for example bishop Turker assisted in the signing of the 1900 Buganda agreement which led to the colonization of Buganda.
- They softened the hearts and the minds of the Africans through the teachings which humbled the Africans and made them accept colonial rule.
- They often invited their home governments to occupy the areas where they worked hence leading to effective colonization.
- They also gave information about the hostile and economic accommodative societies and therefore the colonizers came well prepared.
- In case of hostility, they called for home protection which helped in the of the rebellions and wars for example religious wars in Buganda.
- They set up infrastructure like roads, railway lines which made movements easy for the colonialists.
- They built schools which became vehicles of indoctrination of western values onto the Africans.
- They provided health services through building health services which reduced the white man's burden.
- They helped to stop slave trade hence creating a conducive atmosphere for the colonialists.
- They introduced legitimate trade whose profits attracted the colonialists to come to east Africa.
- They promoted agriculture upon which became the back bone of the colonial economy.
- They identified and informed their home governments about the economic potential of east Africa which attracted the colonialists to come.
- Their education and teaching created a class of collaborators like semei kakunguru, nuwa mbaguta and Apollo kaggwe who assisted to extend colonial rule.
- They encouraged the use of foreign languages like English, French, Latin and German and also translated many books into African language which made communications with the colonialists easy.
- In Buganda for example they were involved in the overthrow of local leaders like kabaka mwanga was overthrown by a combined missionary effort.
- They financed colonial agents for example the IBEACO was financed by the CMS which injected 50,000 pounds in the company that enabled it to run for one year.

- They paralyzed the African societies by dividing them along religious lines and thus could not put up united force against colonialism.
- They Effectuated the doctrine of effective occupation as demanded by the Berlin Act of 1884-85.
- They built mission stations like Rabai Mpya, Bagamoyo, Kampala etc which acted as administrative posts/headquarters during the times of colonization.

Qn. Explain the contribution of missionary work towards the colonization of East Africa

PROBLEMS FACED BY THE MISSIONARIES IN EAST AFRICA

- Missionaries came to East Africa around the 2nd half of the 19th century to spread Christianity. However, in the course of the work, they faced the following problems.
- Language barrier since the missionaries were using foreign languages which the local people could not understand.
- The influence of Islam caused a big problem to Christian missionaries since the already converted Muslims always opposed Christian teachings.
- Disease and epidemics were also a big problem for example they always suffered from malaria, sleeping sickness, small pox etc yet they had no treatment at that time.
- They also had a problem of hostile tribes who made some areas hard to penetrate and thus making the work of spreading the gospel hard for example the Masai, Nandi etc.
- Geographical barrier made their transport and communication difficult for example impassable swamps, lakes, rivers, etc prevented them to reach some areas.
- Wild animals claimed missionary lives and thus reducing them in number.
- The inadequate supplies in terms of food, clothes, equipment in East Africa were very uncomfortable.
- Threats from traditional leaders like Kabalega and Mwanga hampered their work.
- Inter-tribal wars between different tribes caused insecurity.
- Resistances from land owners or landlords also hampered their work because they lacked areas to establish settlements and mission centers.
- They faced opposition from traditional religious practices.
- They lacked enough manpower to carry out their political interest and evangelism since they were numerically very few.

- Christian teachings conflicted with the traditional values and beliefs for example monogamy verses polygamy.
- Many times, their porters stole and disappeared with the valuable goods.
- They were often mistaken as people of military might aiming at admiring and taking away their wealth and independence for example bishop hannington was mistakenly killed.

Qn. What problems did the Christian missionaries encounter in east Africa

EFFECTS OF MISSIONARY ACTIVITIES IN EAST AFRICA UPTO INDEPENDENCE

- Effects of missionary activities in east Africa were both positive and negative.
- Positive effects.
- Through their preaching's, many people were converted to Christianity for example by 1911, there were around 280,000 Christians in Buganda alone.
- Churches were built as opposed to traditional shrines so as to promote the spread of Christianity.
- They encouraged general literacy by promoting the 3Rs of reading, writing and arithmetic.
- They built schools like gayaza, kisubi, and buddo etc in order to promote literacy.
- They tried to elevate the status of women through promoting domestic science for example at gayaza, nabbingo and namagunga.
- They introduced technical and vocational education like carpentry, brick laying etc.
- They introduced the printing of press in east Africa.
- They promoted the writing of African languages like Luganda, Kiswahili etc.
- They improved on the health of Africans through building hospitals like nsambya, rubaga and mengo etc.
- They introduced plantation agriculture /cash crop economy which became the backbone of the east African economy.
- They introduced new farming methods like the use of fertilizers, crop rotation, use of the plough etc.
- They introduced new cash crops like cotton, coffee and sisal, rubber etc.
- They introduced new culture (western styles) of dressing, dancing and eating.

- They introduced new languages like Latin, Kiswahili, German and English.
- Missionaries also promoted legitimate trade to act as substitute to slave trade.
- They also built infrastructures like roads to open up the interior of east Africa for legitimate trade.
- They fought slave trade and slavery in east Africa leading to its abolition.
- They also set up homes for the freed slaves and taught them practical skills like brick laying, carpentry etc.
- They opened up mission stations that later developed into towns like rabai mpya, tabora, Kampala, bagamoyo etc.
- Products of missionary education were later to champion the nationalistic struggles like ben kiwanuka, Ignatius k musaazi, Dr Milton obote.
- They paved way for European colonialism through the teaching and activities.
- For example, through Christianity, they softened the hearts and minds of Africans and thus weakened the African political power.
- They influenced some local leaders to collaborate with the colonial administrators like Apollo kagwa, kakungulu, mbaguta and miti.
- They created employment opportunities for many Africans like they served clerks, teachers, nurse etc.
- Some missionaries like Dr. John Krapft, Rebmann and Dr. Livingstone etc carried out exploration work.
- They promoted better living conditions and better housing facilities among the Africans.

Negative effects.

- They engaged in the politics of many societies like in Buganda, they helped in the overthrow of mwanga and also fueled the famous wangereza –wafaransa wars.
- During the religious wars, many Africans were killed including the Uganda martyrs in 1886.
- On the other hand, the Uganda matyres became the lasting symbol of missionary legacy in Buganda.
- They also divided the Buganda society along religious lines which influenced national politics in Uganda in the 1950s, 60s and 80s.

- They introduced Christianity which undermined traditional practices like marriage, dances, funerals etc referring to them as satanic.
- Their activities checked on the spread of Islam and its culture in east Africa.

Qn. Explain the effects of missionary activities in east Africa upto independence time

MISSIONARIES IN BUGANDA.

The coming of European christian missionaries in Buganda was as a result of the visit of Henry Mutooni Starnly at the kabaka's palace in November 1875.

- He had a discussion with Muteesa I and convinced him to write a letter to the Queen of England requesting for missionary work in Buganda.
- In the letter, Muteesa expressed the desire to have missionary work in Buganda.
- Following his request therefore, there was an influx of missionaries into Buganda.
- In 1877, the first group of missionaries arrived, the **CMS** that included the Gold Smith, Rev. Wilson and Alexander Markey. These arrived at Rubaga –Muteesa's capital in July 1877.
- In February 1879, the Roman Catholics arrived in Buganda led by Father Simon Lourdel and brother Amans.

REASONS WHY MUTEESA I INVITED THE MISSIONARIES IN BUGANDA.

- He hoped their presence would enhance his prestige among fellow African chiefs.
- He hoped that they would give him guns to strengthen his military position.
- He expected military assistance against his traditional enemy kabalega)
- He wanted them to teach Christianity to his which he believed his people.
- He was tired of the threats and demands from the traditionalists and the Muslims.
- He also expected help from them against his Egyptian oppressors.
- He hoped to gain from them in terms of knowledge and technical skills for example he hoped to gain from European carpenters and artisans to make furniture.
- He expected them to teach his people how to read and write.
- He also wanted his people to trade with them.
- Muteesa welcomed the missionaries because of his friendly and diplomatic character.
- He wanted to establish diplomatic ties with their countries of origin.

- He wanted modernization and westernization.
- Muteesa expected assistance against the Swahilis and the trader's threats.
- Muteesa was also involved in a power struggle with traditional chiefs of the lubaale cult and expected missionaries to neutralize.

Qn. Why did Muteesa I invite the European missionaries in Buganda

THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN MWANGA AND THE MISSIONARIES

- Mwanga came to power after the death of his father in 1884.
- He was only 18 years old therefore he was young and inexperienced.
- On top of being young, he was erratic, brutal, emotional and weak minded.
- He came to power at a time when Christian missionaries and the Muslims were struggling for domination in Buganda.
- Islam had been introduced by the Arabs earlier in 1840, followed by the Anglicanism in 1877 and later catholicism in 1879.
- Kabaka mwanga had a natural hatred against the missionaries since he looked at them as a threat to his power and authority.
- To make matters worse, the rate of conversion to Christianity at that time was alarming.
- The fear was worsened when the Arabs warned Mwanga about the dealings with the missionaries whom they believed were agents of imperialism.
- He was also not diplomatic as his father in dealing with the foreigners.
- He failed to bring one group against the other, unable to contain the pressure from them.
- Because of his failure to control the different religious groups, conflicts cropped up among them.
- He was also alarmed by the increasing German interests in East Africa.
- The Germans had occupied Tanganyika in 1884 and hence alarmed mwanga about their intentions.
- To make matters worse, 1884-1885 was a time for European scramble for and partition of Africa.
- He also failed to establish a good working relationship with the local chiefs.
- Chiefs exploited his weakness and warned him about the Christian missionaries.

- He then ordered his subjects not to deal with the missionaries.
- In November 1885, he ordered for the murder of Bishop Hannington in Busoga.
- On 3rd June 1886, he ordered for the execution of 30 Christian converts at Namugongo for refusing his homosexual advances and giving up their new faith.
- In 1894, the British declared a protectorate over Buganda and Uganda.
- In 1897, Mwanga and his chiefs protested against the British but in vain.
- In August 1897, Mwanga was overthrown and replaced by his infant son Daudi Chwa II.
- Later, he fled to Lango and joined Kabalega in his struggle against the British imperialists.
- Unfortunately, the two were captured and exiled to Seychelles Island from where he died in 1903.

Qtn. Why did Kabaka Mwanga fall out with the missionaries in Buganda

POLITICAL-RELIGIOUS WARS IN BUGANDA.

- These were religious wars fought in-between the different religious groups in Buganda.
- These wars took place between 1885 and 1900 in Buganda.
- They involved the Catholics from France and the Protestants from Britain.
- They also involved the Moslems and the traditionalists.
- The appearance of several religious groups i.e the Muslims, Catholics, Protestants and traditionalists caused confusion in Buganda.

-CAUSES OF THE RELIGIOUS –POLITICAL WARS IN BUGANDA

- The desire by each religion to win more converts in Buganda led to religious wars.
- The desire by each religion to win more pages at the king's court caused the religious wars in Buganda.
- The desire by each religion to win the king's favour to their side caused religious wars in Buganda.
- The western religion brought by the rival colonial masters proved to be an extension of imperial rivalry between France and Britain hence leading to religious wars in Buganda.
- It was also an extension of religious conflicts between the Catholics and the Protestants in Europe.

- The catholics accused the Protestants that they wanted mwanga to accept IBEACO because the company would help the Protestants against the catholics hence causing religious wars in Buganda.
- There was rumour that Mwanga was learning Protestantism when he was exiled in kabula, this annoyed other religions hence leading to wars in Buganda.
- The Christians condemned traditional religion and customs for misleading people hence leading to conflict.
- The Christians did not want to be dominated by the Moslems.
- It was caused by the distrust between the various groups for example offices had been divided among the protestants and the catholics.
- The death of Muteesa 1 in 1884 left a power vacuum in Buganda's politics.
- The rise of kabaka mwanga who was young and inexperienced. Mwanga was not only young, but also weak minded, brutal, erratic and emotional.
- The killing of Bishop Hannington also contributed to the wars.
- The killing of the Uganda martyrs on 3rd June 1886 also led to the wars.
- Mwanga's failure to play one group against another made wars inevitable.
- The disagreements among the various pages in the king's court also made conflicts inevitable.

Qn. Explain the causes of the political religious wars in Buganda between 1885 and 1900

COURSE OF THE RELIGIOUS WARS IN BUGANDA 1885-1900.

- These were different religious groups in buganda; the muslims, protestants, catholics and the traditionalists.
- The wars took place between 1885-1900 in Buganda.
- These wars are some times called political-religious wars in Buganda because they were not only religious but also political.
- They are also known as wangereza-wafaransa wars because of the involvement of two main religions that's the catholics from and protestants from Britain.
- It should be noted that by 1860, islam had already been established in Buganda.

- In 1875, H.M. Sternly visited Buganda and convinced Muteesa I to write a letter to the queen of England inviting Christian missionaries.
- In 1877, the first group of missionaries who were the Protestants arrived in Buganda and these were the Wangereza.
- In 1879, the Catholics from France also arrived in Buganda and came to be called the Wafaransa.
- The presence of the four main religions set a stage for religious confusion in Buganda.
- In 1884, Kabaka Muteesa I died and he was succeeded by an infant king known as Mwanga.
- The death of Muteesa and the coming of Mwanga brought more confusion in Buganda than before.
- Not only young was Kabaka Mwanga, and inexperienced. He was also emotionally unstable as a king.
- At first in 1885, Mwanga killed about 3 Christian converts accusing them of being disloyal to him.
- In around November 1885, Mwanga ordered for the killing of Bishop Hannington who was coming to his kingdom from the East.
- On June 3rd 1886, he killed about 30 converts at Namugongo. This day is still remembered as a martyr's day in the history of Buganda and the whole world.
- In 1887, Mackey and others were forced into exile on Mwanga's orders.
- In 1888, there was rumour circulating that Mwanga was planning to evict the religious groups in Buganda. This worsened Mwanga's relationship with these religious groups.
- As a result, all the four religious groups combined to overthrow Kabaka Mwanga and he was replaced by Kiweewa.
- When Kiweewa refused to be circumcised, the Muslims turned against him, he was overthrown and replaced by Kalema.
- Later in October 1890, Mwanga re-organised and overthrew Kalema.
- However, his stay in power was short lived and in 1892, there was actual fighting between the Protestants and the Catholics for power at the king's palace.
- Captain Lugard of IBEACO sided with the Protestants and hence the Protestants defeated the Catholics.
- In 1894, the British declared a protectorate over Buganda.

- Mwanga strongly resisted British imperialism in Buganda but he was defeated and was forced to join kabalega in Acholi land.
- In 1899, the two were captured forced into exile in the Seychelles Island.
- During the same year, Sir Harry Johnston arrived in Buganda to study the political situation.
- In 1900, the Buganda agreement was signed and this marked the end of the political-religious wars in Buganda.

Qn. Describe the course of the religious wars in Buganda upto 1900.

EFFECTS OF THE POLITICAL RELIGIOUS WARS IN BUGANDA.

- The political religious wars had numerous political, social and economic effects on the people of Buganda. These include.
- These wars led to massive loss of lives in Buganda since many people were killed in the course of the wars.
- It should be remembered that about 30 Christian converts were burnt at Namugongo.
- There was destruction of crops and property including banana plantations.
- The wars led to general insecurity in Buganda.
- The Christians formed two army groups just to protect themselves.
- By 1880, they urged their home governments to colonise Uganda to protect their lives and those of the converts.
- Christians became identified with foreign countries like Protestants with Britain and Catholics with France.
- In 1892, fighting broke out between the Wafaransa and the Wangereza (the battle of Mengo).
- Chief Officers in Buganda were divided according to religion.
- It led to the formation of political parties along religious lines like DP for Catholics and UPC for Protestants.
- The Catholics and Moslems were sidelined by the Buganda administration and forced them into political inferiority.
- Schools were run and built on denominational secretarialism, for instance schools for Catholics only and those for Anglicans only.
- As a result, there existed rivalry between schools of different religious denominations.

- The war led to the overthrow of mwanga who was later forced into exile.
- Mwangas successors like kiweewa and Kalema were also overthrown by the religious factions.
- During the course of the wars, mwanga became confused and did not know which religion to follow.
- Some baganda became prominent as a result of the wars for example Apollo kaggwa, zakaria kisingiri etc.
- The wars checked on the spread of Islam in Buganda.
- These wars led to signing of the 1900 Buganda agreement to stop the religious wars.
- It led to the discrimination in civil services along religious lines.
- The wars led to the division of Buganda among the Protestants, Moslems and Catholics.
- The Protestants took the central counties of Kyadondo, Mawokota, Busiro and the traditionalists lost.
- The Catholics were given Buddu and the Moslems were given butambala and gomba.
- There were to be two katikiros; one a Protestant and one a Catholic and this ended in 1900 when the katikiro was confirmed as a Protestant.
- They increased the disunity that had been created by the British indirect rule.
- They ended Buganda's independence and later Uganda's independence.
- The Protestants became dominant in the politics of Buganda and Uganda at large.
- Christianity and Islam weakened Buganda's traditional religion. This was because most people converted either to Christianity or Islam.
- It led to the colonisation of Buganda and Uganda as a whole. This was because these wars increased the British influence in the politics of Buganda and Uganda.
- The war made religion become an important factor in Buganda's politics.
- It led to nation wide spread of Christianity.
- It divided Buganda and the whole of Uganda along religious lines.
- It created enmity between the followers of different religions.
- The war was won by the Protestants who became dominant in the Uganda's politics.

Qn. Explain the effects of the political religious wars in Buganda.

CHARTERED COMPANIES IN EAST AFRICA.

- These were trading associations that were granted charters to trade and acquire colonies on behalf of the home governments.
- These companies were therefore to perform their role as traders and at the same time act as imperialists.
- In East Africa, the imperial British East Africa Company(IBEACO)worked on behalf of the Britain while German east Africa company(geaco)worked on behalf of the Germany.
- G.E.A.CO. was founded by Carl Peters in 1884 while I.B.E.A.CO was founded by William Macknon in 1888.

AIMS OF CHARTERED COMPANIES IN EAST AFRICA.

- They aimed at safeguarding the interests of their home governments and their spheres of influence.
- They also wanted to open up commerce and trade in the interior of East Africa.
- They wanted to abolish slave trade in the interior of East Africa.
- They wanted to promote legitimate trade in east Africa.
- They wanted to look for market for their manufactured goods.
- They wanted to look for the essential raw materials to feed their home industries.
- They wanted to prevent other European powers from encroaching on their spheres of influence.
- They wanted to promote agriculture especially cash crop growing in the interior of east africa.
- They wanted to provide information about the interior of east Africa.
- They aimed at setting up colonial head quarters or administrative points in East Africa.
- They wanted to carryout effective administration of their home governments.
- They wanted to control strategic positions in east Africa like the source of the Nile.
- The also wanted to train Africans as colonial soldiers.
- They wanted to crush down rebellions in east Africa in order to create paece and stability in the interior of east Africa.
- They wanted ro protect the missionaries in the interior of East Africa.

Qn. Explain the aims of chartered companies in east Africa.

ROLE PLAYED BY F.D LUGARD IN THE COLONISATION OF EAST AFRICA.

- Captain Fredrick Lugard was the first administrator of the I.B.E.A.CO.
- He was a retired army officer who had served in India in the British colonial government.
- Lugard was an agent of the I.B.E.A.CO in Uganda.
- His main duty in East Africa was to defend British colonial interest in Uganda.
- He signed a protectorate treaty with Kabaka Mwanga which gave the British colonial government an upper hand in the affairs of Buganda.
- He led an expedition against Buganda in December 1890 and with the Christian army and he defeated the Baganda Muslims on the Bunyoro border.
- He then marched into Toro, driving out Bunyoro army and resorted Omukama Kasagama.
- He recruited the Sudanese soldiers who had been left by Emin Pasha into the colonial army.
- He built several forts on the Toro- Bunyoro border and in Buganda which were used as administrative centres during colonial rule.
- He used the Sudanese soldiers to maintain these forts.
- In 1892, he signed a treaty with Ankole, thus making it accompany treaty.
- He intervened in the battle of Mengo in 1892 on the Protestants side which helped the Registrar victory over the Catholics.
- In the same year, he signed another treaty with Mwanga which gave him official political control.
- Imperial rivalry between the I.B.E.A.CO and the G.E.A.CO. led to the Anglo-German agreement of 1886 which confirmed Kenya as a British territory.
- Further rivalries, led to the Heligoland treaty of 1890 which confirmed Uganda as a British territory.
- Lugard also financed many colonial activities in East Africa.
- In 1892, Lugard returned home (Britain) and campaigned vigorously for the British retention of Buganda.
- In 1892, Lugard wrote the guide line book on the colonial administration known as the dual mandate in Tropical Africa which became a yard stick for British administration.

Qn. Explain the role played by Captain Lugard in the colonization of East Africa.

ROLE PLAYED BY CARL PETERS IN THE COLONISATION OF EAST AFRICA.

- Carl Peters was the pioneer of the German colonial ambitions.
- He founded the German East Africa company G.E.A.CO in 1884.
- Peters was the brain child of the German colonial society in 1884.
- He was widely known for his trading activities.
- In 1885, the company received the charter from the German government which granted it official permission to carry out activities in East Africa.
- He signed several treaties with the African chiefs in East Africa for example Usambara, Kilimanjaro with Mumbasa of Kenya and Mwanga of Buganda in 1890. These treaties brought these areas under German spheres of influence.
- These treaties were presented to the Berlin conference of 1884/1885 as colonial evidence.
- He helped Germany to acquire Usagara, Uruguru, Ukami, Uzigua and later parts of Witu and the Kilimanjaro district.
- He also financed colonial administration through the G.E.A.CO.
- He also provided the protectorate government with the manpower especially in administration.
- He helped to silence rebellions against colonial rule for example Abushiri and Mukwawa rebellions.
- He encouraged the plantation farming upon which the colonial economy depended.
- He also encouraged legitimate trade and fought slave trade to protect the colonial economic state.
- He fed the home government with important information about the economic potential of East Africa which attracted them.
- The rivalry of his company G.E.A.CO with the I.B.E.A.CO led to the Anglo-Germany treaty of 1886 which gave the Witu area to the British and the whole of Tanzania to Germany.
- Further rivalries between the two led to the Heligoland treaty of 1890 which confirmed British rule in Uganda and likewise German rule in Tanganyika and the Heligoland.
- Following the coastal revolts, the German government took over control of Tanganyika in 1890.
- By then, the company had run bankrupt and had become inefficient.

Qtn, Explain the role played by Carl Peters in the colonization of East Africa.

ROLE PLAYED BY CHARTERED COMPANIES IN THE COLONISATION OF EAST AFRICA.

- Traders played a big role in the colonization of east Africa?
- They came under the umbrella of the trading companies of the chartered companies.
- The main chartered companies in east africa were the G.E.A.CO and the I.B.G.E.A.CO
- They promoted legitimate trade whose profits attracted the colonialists.
- They stopped slave trade and east Africa became peacefully for colonial rule.
- They promoted agriculture upon which the colonial economy thrived.
- They provided information regarding east Africa's minerals and other resources which attracted colonialists.
- They protected missionaries who were the fore runners of colonialism.
- They signed treaties with African chiefs that were later used as colonial evidence for example the 1900 Buganda agreement.
- They crushed African resistances and created a conducive atmosphere for colonialism.
- They recommended for the construction of infrastructures like roads and railway lines which eased the transportation of colonial administrators.
- They set up administrative quarters / forts and garrisons which were very important during the times of colonial rule.
- They provided administrators to rule on behalf of the colonial masters.
- When they became bankrupt, they always surrendered their charters to their home governments.
- Their rivalries brought colonialists for example between the GEACO and the IBEACO over east Africa between 1884 and 1890.
- They financed colonial administration in their respective areas of influence.
- They provided guns to the chiefs or collaborators which eased colonial administration.
- They provided information about the hostile tribes like the massai which helped the colonialists to avoid them.

Qtn. Explain the role played by the chartered companies in the colonization of east Africa.

PROBLEMS FACED BY CHARTERED COMPANIES IN EAST AFRICA.

- Lack of enough funds to facilitate their activities in east Africa. This made their work quite difficult.
- Lack of enough man power to effectively carryout their activities.
- Lack of enough medical facilities like drugs and hospitals. This caused loss of lives from the tropical diseases like malaria, yellow fever, small pox etc.
- Lack of enough supplies from home like food stuffs and fire arms.
- Poor means of transport also hindered their progress in the interior since there were no developed road and railway networks.
- They lacked co-operation with the local traders of east Africa for example the slave traders who viewed chartered companies as a threat to their business.
- Rivalries between chartered companies themselves also hindered their progress.
- Wild animals like lions also claimed their lives especially when passing through thick forests and bushes.
- Tropical diseases like malaria, yellow fever etc also affected their activities.
- Hostility from some Africans who resisted their activities for example the Abushiri rebellion which led to the collapse of GEACO.
- Lack of marketable commodities therefore lack of steady source of income.
- Interference by slave traders especially the Arabs and the Swahili traders who were opposed to its abolition.
- Poor accommodation of the poor housing conditions in the interior.
- Limited natural resources contrary to what they expected before.
- Harsh climatic conditions especially floods and prolonged drought affected their progress.
- Company activities were restricted by their home governments and this hindered their progress.
- They lacked proper geographical knowledge about the interior of east Africa.
- There was mismanagement and inefficiency in the companies since they had poor and inexperienced administrators.
- Language barrier made communication difficult since they could not effectively communicate with the Africans.
- Poor means of communication since they had no way of communicating back home.

- The companies also had conflicting interest since they had to do business and at some times carry out administration.
- Religious wars in the interior forexample the wangereza and the wafaransa wars in Buganda also affected their progress.
- The need to establish direct and effective colonial administration also forced the companies to withdraw.

Qtn.What problems did the chartered companies faced in east Africa.

THE SCRAMBLE FOR AND PARTITION OF EAST AFRICA.

- The sramble for east Africa was the desire and rush by European powers to acquire colonoies or spherers of influence in East Africa.
- Germay and Britain were the main competitors in the struggle.
- The partition of East Africa refers to the division of east Africa between Germany and Britain.
- This was following of the berlin conference of 1884 -85 and the 1886 and 1890 anglo-germany agreements.
- As a result, East Africa was partitioned as Germany took Tanganyika and Britain tookkenya and Uganda.
- As such, colonialism of effective administration then followed.

CAUSES OF THE SRAMBLE AND PARTITION OF EAST AFRICA.

- The causes of scramble and partition of East Africa were social, political, scientific and economic in nature.
- Economically, the effects of the industrial revolution in Europe caused the sramble and partition in East frica.
- The need for raw materials to feed the home industries made European powers to sramble for colonies in east Africa since the continent had proven the source.
- The mineral prospects in Africa made European powers to sramble for east Africa in oredor to monopolise their exploitation. This followed the discovery of Diamond in 1867 at Kimberly and Gold in 1885 at Witwatersrand in South Africa.
- The acute demand for areas for investment also caused scramble for and partition of east Africa since European powers needed areas to invest their surplus capital.

- There was also need to acquire market in East Africa where European powers would sell their finished goods hence the scramble for and partition of east Africa.
- European powers also wanted to resettle their surplus population which had been rendered useless by the industrial revolution in Europe.
- The pressure exerted by chartered companies also explains European scramble for and partition of East Africa for example the IBEACO always called upon the home government to come and effectively administer her spheres of influence.
- Socially, racial superiority/feeling among the Europeans made them scramble for east Africa with a view of civilizing of the uncivilized Africans.
- They wanted to spread Christianity in order to save Africans souls from the lasting fires.
- The love of adventure made the Europeans to come and explorer Africa natural endowment.
- The humanitarian desire to stop slave trade and the need to introduce legitimate trade made them to scramble for east Africa.
- They also wanted to stop the evil practices in East Africa like human sacrifice which were practiced by some communities in east Africa.
- Politically, they wanted to acquire colonies because of the ever growing sense of nationalism.
- They wanted to acquire colonies in order to gain prestige since the more colonies a country had, the more powerful it became.
- They wanted to control the strategic places like the source of the Nile.
- The role of the Berlin conference of 1884-1885 which streamlined and fastened the process of partition of east Africa especially following the doctrine of 'effective occupation'.

QN. Why did the European countries scramble for colonies in east Africa?

THE BERLIN CONFERENCE OF 1884-1885 AND THE PARTITIONING OF EAST AFRICA.

- The berlin conference was the European meeting that sat in Berlin the capital of Germany from 15th November 1884 to 13th January 1885.
- It was called by the German chancellor Otto von bismark to decide the issue of scramble and partition of East Africa.
- There had been many issuses in Africa threatening war among European powers for colonies.

- The Berlin conference was therefore to discuss various issues pertaining in the peaceful partition of East Africa amongst the European powers.

TERMS OF THE BERLIN CONFERENCE.

- The Berlin conference spelled out that European powers were to do the following.
- They had to identify and notify others about areas of control and interest.
- They had to carry out the principle of effective occupation.
- European powers had to ensure a peaceful policy in acquiring colonies in East Africa.
- European powers were to ensure freedom and navigation along the Congo and Niger basins (major rivers in Africa.)
- All treaties signed were to act as a sign post for effective occupation.

IMPORTANCE OF THE BERLIN CONGRESS AND THE ACT WITH THE SCRAMBLE AND PARTITION OF EAST AFRICA.

- The Berlin conference legalized the /scramble for East Africa and later partition between Germany and Britain.
- The conference passed peaceful resolutions among European powers which led to the Anglo-German agreement of 1886 and 1890.
- These resolutions later culminated into the partition of East Africa.
- It passed the principle of effective occupation after identifying which was affected by the Germans and the British in the interior of East Africa.
- It resolved the arms embargo to East Africa and rendered the defenseless.
- It emphasized practical means to end slave trade which favoured the process of partitioning of East Africa.
- It legalized the treaties signed between East African chiefs and Europeans to ensure that Africans were to be permanently under European administration.
- To this effect the Berlin conference is a remarkable European event as it led to the colonization of East Africa as a whole.
- It accelerated the colonization because the threat of war between imperial powers was eliminated by the conference.

- It opened east Africa for European economic exploitation.
- It emphasised European co-operation in the colonial matters.
- It ensured that Africans were permanently to remain weak and disunited.

Qtn Explain the importance of the berlin conference to the scramble and partition of east Africa.

THE PROCESS OF PARTITIONING OF EAST AFRICA.

- The process of scramble and partition of east Africa started with the Berlin conference of 1884-1885 which legalised Britain and Germany to extend their spheres of influence in east Africa.
- The berlin conference resolved that the process of partitioning of East Africa was to be gradual and done through diplomatic and peaceful means.
- In 1885, Carl Peters of Germany acquired the Area of usagara, Ukami, Uruguru and uzigua through treaties with the local chiefs of Tanganyika. Shortly afterwards, he also acquired witu and Kilimanjaro.
- Britain was not happy with the German control of witu in Kenya.
- However, the actual work of penetration and occupation was first left to the chartered companies since it was cheaper and more convenient for both European nations.
- In 1886, conflicts broke out between Britain and Germany with the sultan of zanzibar. This resulted into the anglo-germany agreement of 1886 which stated that the sultan's coastal strip be extended from Delgado to r.tana, kismayu, brava, Mogadishu and Merca.
- The interior was to be divided from river umba to Kilimanjaro upto the shores of Lake Victoria. However, the western area of Uganda was not defined. There was a race now opened between Britain and Germany.
- In 1890, Carl Peters of GEACO moved in and signed a treaty with mwanga, yet earlier in 1888, the IBEACO had been given a charter to operate from there.
- However, events in Europe advocated for Anglo-German agreement (Heligoland treaty which formalised Uganda and Kenya as British spheres of influence.
- Germany also gave up claims over Witu land and eventually Britain also took over Zanzibar, Pemba and Witu.

- The end of the Anglo-German agreement of 1890 concluded the Anglo-Germany division of east Africa as Uganda was declared a British protectorate in 1894.
- In 1895, Kenya also became a British protectorate and by 1900, Tanganyika was fully a Germany sphere of influence.

qn. How East Africa was partitioned by the European countries?

MAP TO BE DRAWN

EFFECTS OF THE SCRAMBLE AND PARTITION OF EAST AFRICA.

- European scramble and partition of East Africa had both immediate and long term effects on the peoples of East Africa.
- It led to the loss of Zanzibar's independence to the British.
- It led to the loss of Uganda's independence in 1894 to the British.
- It also led to the loss of Kenya's independence in 1895 to the British.
- It led to the formalization of German rule in Tanganyika based at Dar-es-Salaam.
- It ended the commercial as well as political independence of Zanzibar, Mombasa and Dar-es-Salaam.
- It led to the imposition of colonial rule in East Africa.
- It led to loss of African traditional authority like mwanga and kabalega were deported.
- It led to the exploitation of African resources in the interior by the Germans and the British like copper, diamond, cotton etc.
- It ended slave trade and led to the introduction of legitimate trade.
- It led to the development of transport and communication network like railway lines, ports, roads and televisions were established to tap economic resources.
- Formal education led to the establishment of schools and colleges and hence people were taught how to read and write.
- There was improvement of health facilities in East Africa as hospitals and dispensaries were constructed.
- It led to the influx of white settlers especially in the Kenyan highlands.
- It led to the introduction of western culture which eroded African culture.

- Christian missionaries flocked in east Africa and christainity was widely spread. This therefore, discouraged the spread of Islamic faith in east Africa.

Qtn Explain the effects of the scramble for and partition of east Africa.

CHARTER 10;

ESTABLISHMENT OF COLONIAL RULE IN EAST AFRICA.

(Methods used in the imposition of colonial rule in East Africa)

- The Europeans used different two methods in the colonization of East Africa and this depended on the nature of each society's response.
- They used direct military conquest against resistant leaders like kabalega and after defeating them, they directly occupied the defeated societies.
- They use treaty signing for example the British signed treaties of protection with Buganda (the 1900 Buganda agreement), the Toro agreement and the Ankole agreement and therefore used them to claim ownerships over these areas.
- They used collaborators to spread their rule in east Africa for example Semei Kakungulu was a signed with the responsibility of controlling the whole of eastern region.
- The divide and rule was also used where the colonial masters would befriend a given society against another seemingly hostile society.
- They used Christian missionaries who softened the hearts of the Africans by teaching them to be humble and welcoming them in order to attain the kingdom of God and hence they even welcomed the colonialists.
- They used intimidation and threats for example in Bunyoro, Nandi, Ankole and also the Karamajongo territories and those who would still resist were either killed or sent to exile which scared the rest.
- They used force where diplomacy failed by directly fighting the Africans hence imposing their rule.
- They built military stations for re-enforcement and they also acted as scare crows to the Africans which helped the colonialists to impose the rule.

- Establishment of infrastructures like roads, schools and railway lines, hospitals played a fundamental role in that they acted as assign of effective occupation and also helped them in the consolidation of their rule because they reduced the white mans burden.
- They also used explorers in that they marked the interior of East Africa and gave information about the economicly rich areas.
- They used traders and trading companies to carry out initial administration for example IBEACO was used to administer Kenya and Uganda.

COLONIAL ADMINISTRATIVE SYSTEMS.

BRITISH COLONIAL ADMINISTRATION POLICY IN EAST AFRICA

INDIRECT RULE;

- Indirect rule was the british administrative policy in east Africa.
- It was popularized by Fredrick lugard in his book the dual mandate in British tropical Africa, written in 1922.
- Lugard had earlier on applied it with a measure of success in India.
- It involved the use of traditional rulers to administer on behalf of the British.
- It was meant to shield the colonial masters and expose the traditional rulers.
- The British could pass directives to the traditional rulers who in turn passed them onto their subjects.
- Traditional rulers were however permitted to retain some shallow powers.
- For example, they were allowed to collect taxes and presided over local courts.
- It was applied in the centralized societies with well-developed institutions like Buganda.
- The policy was based on divide and rule policy.
- The policy perpetuated class distinctions since the ruling families became the elite both socially and economically.
- The system made the ruling families (aristocrats) to a lot of wealth.

Qtn. what was the indirect rule.

WHY THE BRITISH APPLIED INDIRECT RULE IN UGANDA.

- It was cheap since the African chiefs were paid little for their service.

- There were already well-established institutions in the areas where it was applied.
- It would reduce resistance against the British.
- The chiefs would be used as shock absorbers and would insulate the British.
- The British wanted to preserve traditional institutions in east Africa.
- It had been used with a measure of success in India.
- African chiefs would acquire some leadership skills through the use of indirect rule.
- The British feared to directly move in some areas infested with diseases.
- It was assign of appreciation to reward those societies which collaborated because the British left them to run their own affairs.
- It was to solve the problem of man power in administering Uganda.
- To solve the problem of language barrier, indirect rule was the only alternative.
- It was the best way to entrench colonial rule without the realization of the subjects.
- It was seem with dual benefits since both the Africans and the British would benefit.
- The African chiefs were opted for because they understood their people better since they lived with them, knew their customs and so could not rise against them.
- It was also intended to make the British unique because their rivals (the Germans and the French) had used direct rule so the British did not want to use the same policy.
- They used indirect rule in order to employ the Africans who could withstand their climatic conditions.
- Because of high levels of under development in some areas, the British feared to move directly into the some areas for example some areas in Uganda were remote, had tsetse flies and would present health problems to the British.
- The system indirectly granted more powers to the British over Africans.
- It was used in order to exploit the illiteracy levels of the Africans by imposing their rule.
- The British believed the traditional rulers secured ready obedience from their subjects.

Qtn.why did the British apply indirect rule in Uganda.

APPLICATION OF INDIRECT RULE IN EAST AFRICA.

- Indirect rule was the British colonial administrative policy in east Africa.

- It was introduced and popularized by Captain Fredrick Lugard in his book 'the dual mandate in British tropical Africa' written in 1922.
- The system was mainly applied in areas with centralized kingdom like Buganda
- It involved the use of conquered chiefs and kings to rule the conquered masses.
- The system entrusted powers to the native chiefs and traditional chiefs for example they collected taxes and presided over local courts.
- At the top, there was the colonial secretary (white man) who was based in London.
- Below the governor were provincial commissioners who were in charge of province.
- These were answerable to the governor.
- Below the provincial commissioner, there were the district commissioners heading every district.
- These took orders from the provincial commissioners.
- Provinces were divided into districts under district commissioners.
- The districts were further divided into counties each under a county chief.
- The county chiefs were to be Africans and took orders from the district officials.
- There was the district council based at the district responsible for planning and designing government projects like road construction etc.
- Counties were subdivided into sub counties under sub county chiefs.
- Sub counties were also broken down into smaller units called parishes under the parish chief.
- The parish chiefs were answerable to the sub-county chiefs.
- The parishes were divided into sub parishes under sub parish chiefs who took orders from the parish chiefs.
- Below the sub parish chiefs were the headmen heading every village.
- The village headmen got orders from the sub parish chiefs and passed them onto the common man.
- All these chiefs from the village headman up to the governor formed a chain of command.
- Indirect rule worked at the local levels, from the district up to the village level. All these positions were reserved for the Africans.
- All top officials were reserved for the British officials.
- Indirect rule was on an assumption that every area was like Buganda.

- In areas with centralized governments, the system created peace and tranquility.
- In the north where there were no organized governments, the British created their own chiefs and councils of elders that were willing to listen to them.

PROBLEMS FACED BY THE BRITISH IN THE APPLICATIONS OF INDIRECT RULE

- Wide spread resistance against the British rule for example the Lamogi rebellion in Acholi, the Nyangire rebellion in Bunyoro (1907) etc.
- The British experienced the problem of the Sudanese mutiny in the north in 1897.
- Disarming the local people who were very hostile was difficult and thus delayed their work of extending colonial administration.
- There was lack of uniform economic activities among these societies hence leading to the poor planning. As a result, the British incurred high costs in administering the rule.
- They also had a problem of inadequate manpower to administer all areas especially as far as the white personnel were concerned.
- There was a problem of transport and communication which greatly affected the activities of the British.
- It was difficult for the British to create a centralized system of authority especially in those areas which lacked it;
- Language barrier was also another problem due to the presence of many languages spoken by the different societies.
- The British also failed to understand the fabric of the Ugandan society since it was composed of people from different backgrounds, origins, cultures etc.
- There were religious and political wars in Uganda causing insecurity and political confusion.
- The 1900 Buganda agreement undermined the Catholics and the Muslims therefore these people often opposed the British administration.
- The Kiganda model of administration which the British wanted to use throughout failed in some areas.
- Some Baganda agents were not loyal to the British.
- They also faced the problem of illiteracy among the indigenous people who did not know how to read and write.

- Some agents were unpopular and hence were resisted for example the Buganda agents in Bunyoro.
- They also faced a problem of wide spread demand for independence by the British.
- Harsh climatic conditions in some areas also hindered their activities /operations.
- The people of Uganda were divided along religious lines which made it difficult for the British to administer.
- They also lacked enough funds to effectively carry out their administration.
- Tropical diseases like malaria, small pox, sleeping sickness etc hindered their progress in some areas.
- It was also had to find and train local leaders who would rule on their behalf especially in the decentralized societies.

Qtn. what problems did the British face in the application of indirect rule in East Africa.

EFFECTS OF INDIRECT RULE IN UGANDA.

- It created a class of ambitious Ugandans like Semei Kakungulu, Nuwa Mbaguta etc.
- It also encouraged self centered thinking among Ugandans.
- It enabled the British to effectively exploit Uganda's resources.
- The policy also made Buganda to develop secessionist tendencies as it demanded to break away from the wider Uganda.
- It also led to neglect of serious education in Uganda in some parts of Uganda.
- It also created a class of conservative Africans especially those who served as chiefs at different levels.
- It also saved Uganda from becoming a settler colony.
- Indirect rule brought religion into politics of Uganda since it encouraged divide and rule system of administration.
- It dehumanized and demoralized African chiefs since it exposed them and pitted them against their subjects.
- It also checked on the spread of Islam in Uganda.

Qn. What were the effects of British rule in Uganda?

GERMAN SYSTEM OF ADMINISTRATION IN TANGANYIKA

DIRECT RULE;

What was direct rule?

This was the german colonial administration policy in Tanganyika. It involved the use of the germans in their direct administration of their colony.

- The policy was started and popularized by Carl Peters of the GEACO. It was more authoritative and entirely relied on European model.
- It was mainly concerned with the collection of taxes as a way of satisfying the selfish economic interests of the Germans.
- It also involved the setting up of the government stations in districts and provinces.
- They established public works like hospitals, roads etc to ease their administration.
- The system was also concerned with the creation of special departments like medical, agriculture, education etc.
- It involved direct supervision of the functions of the government by the colonial administration.
- It also involved replacing all traditional rulers with colonial governors appointed by the german colonial government.
- In indirect rule traditional chiefs lost their political power which was given to the german agents (Akidas and Jumbes).
- Direct rule was applied in Tanganyika by the germans and it was known for its ruthless and exploitative nature.

WHY THE GERMANS APPLIED DIRECT RULE IN TANGANYIKA.

1. Since the germans had used force to capture many parts of Tanganyika, they needed to use force to maintain them.

2. The Germans believed that it was the only system through which they could effectively exploit and benefit from the African resources.
3. They also believed that the system would enable them to effectively administer their colony.
4. The Germans had used force to take over many parts of Tanganyika and therefore soldiers had to be used, otherwise Africans could revolt at the slightest opportunity.
5. The Germans had suffered early revolts and therefore had to bring in the harsh *askaris* and *jumbes* to tame the Africans.
6. The Germans believed it was the only system of administration.
7. The Germans wanted to promote and impose their superior culture over the Africans.
8. The Germans were also proud people and never wanted to share the administration with the Africans.
9. In many societies, there were no chiefs and where they existed, they were not faithful or powerful enough and therefore the Germans had no one to entrust authority with.
10. They might have opted for this system because they had enough manpower to man all departments and thus there was no need to recruit Africans.
11. They might have feared the expenses of training Africans before they could take over administration.
12. The Germans lacked experience in colonial administration.
13. They feared to use a system that was being used by their rivals like the British.
14. Tanganyika lacked many centralized societies that would produce enough chiefs to be used in the administration.
15. The Germans were being threatened by the British in Tanganyika.
16. The Germans also believed in the principle of effective occupation which needed direct rule.
17. Direct rule was a way of creating employment for the German settlers.
18. Bismarck's policy of blood and iron inspired the Germans to use force in controlling their colonies.
19. Germany joined the scramble late hence needed direct rule to quicken the process.
20. The Germans wanted to build a strong empire in Africa,

Qtn. Why the Germans applied direct rule in Tanganyika.

APPLICATION OF DIRECT RULE IN TANGANYIKA

- German administration started in 1891 taking over from GEACO.
- They used a system of direct rule which involved the Germans in the direct administration of their colonies.
- Direct rule was started and popularized by Carl Peters of the GEACO.
- At the top of the colonial structure in Tanganyika, there was a governor stationed at Dar-es-salam.
- At first most governors were soldiers and had wide powers and authority.
- The governor was directly answerable to the colonial minister. He carried out direct supervision of the functions in the colony, set up government committees like medicine, agriculture etc.
- In 1904, the governor's council was set up to advise the governor on the day to day running of the colony.
- The council had three government servants and 5-12 people all of whom had to be Germans.
- The Germans divided Tanganyika into districts and by 1914 there were 22 districts.
- Each district was under a district officer called *Berzirksamtmann* with a police force and a small army to maintain law and order in the area.
- The district officers were charged with the collection of taxes, appointed and dismissed African junior chiefs.
- The district heads also acted as judges and presided over the cases and administering of punishments. They also acted as a highest court of appeal.
- Of the 22 districts, 20 were under the civil rule while the rebellious districts of the Mahenge and Iringa were put under military control.
- The districts were further divided into counties, sub counties, parishes and then into villages of 20,00-30,000 people.
- The two districts of Burundi and Rwanda were left under traditional authority and supervised by the German residents.
- Below, the districts heads were *Akidas*. Most of the *Akidas* were Arabs or Swahili.
- Both the *Akidas* and the *jumbes* were responsible for collecting taxes and supervising the government projects like the cotton scheme.

- These Akidas and Jumbes replaced the local chiefs in Tanganyika. It was only in unyanyembe where the traditional rulers were left with the traditional roles.
- They were harsh and brutal hence making the German rule very unpopular.
- They enforced forced labour on public works like the construction of roads and communal cotton growing.
- German administration was characterised with mal-administration and brutality which led to rebellions like Maji-Maji, Abushiri revolt and Hehe uprising.
- In their administration, the Germans isolated themselves from the local people which aroused resentment towards their rule.
- The German rule was brought to an end when the British took over Tanganyika as a mandate territory.

Qtn. How did the Germans apply direct rule in Tanganyika?

EFFECTS OF GERMAN RULE ON THE PEOPLES OF TANGANYIKA.

- Africans lost their independence since the local chiefs were stripped of their powers and given them to the akidas and the jumbes.
- Africans were subjected to forced labour on German plantations and public works.
- There was forced cash crop growing in Tanganyika where crops like cotton, cloves etc were grown.
- The Germans imposed harsh and exploitative taxes on the Africans for example a hut tax of 3 rupees.
- Africans were brutalized and humiliated by the akidas and the jumbes.
- Many chiefs were stripped of their powers and given them to the akidas and jumbes.
- Their rule was so harsh and cruel hence hatred by the Africans.
- African cultures, customs and institutions were destroyed by the Germans for example they entered mosques with dogs, burnt shrines etc.
- Africans lost a lot of their land to the German settlers.
- As a result, there was wide spread discontent and resentment especially against the Akidas.
- This led to the rise of nationalism as people started revolting against rule.

- Rebellions became common in Tanganyika like maji maji rebellion, Abushiri revolt etc.
- The rebellions caused a lot of insecurity and instability making Africans live in fear and panic.
- The wide spread of conflicts and wars led to the loss of lives and destruction of property.
- Famine also broke out due to the forced cash crop growing and the scorched earth policy.
- German rule in Tanganyika also divided Africans into collaborators and resisters.
- African traders like the Nyamwezi were edged out of trade by the German settlers.
- However after 1904, the Germans changed their system of administration from direct to indirect rule.
- They then adopted dialogue as opposed to the use of force.
- African interests became paramount and the settlers' interest became second.
- Many powerful local chiefs were appointed to replace the akidas and the jumbes.
- The Germans abolished forced labour on all government projects.
- The brutal chiefs, the Akidas and the Jumbes were sacked.
- Roads and railway lines were developed to ease transportation.
- Western civilisation was spread through building schools and churches.
- They led to the spread of Christianity in Tanganyika except at the coast.

Qtn. What were the effects of German rule on the peoples of Tanganyika?

REFORMS INTRODUCED BY THE BRITISH IN TANGANYIKA AFTER 1919

- The British took over Tanganyika on 1919 as a mandate territory
- They established a new administration and made the following changes;
- Sir Horace Byatt was appointed as the first governor of Tanganyika.
- He retained the akidas and generally the whole German administration as he found it.
- The major challenge facing the British at the time was to set the economy back on its feet after the war disruptions.
- He was later accused of failure to put Tanganyika to the serious economic recovery track.
- Also failed to close up the Germans had created between the rulers and the ruled.
- He was therefore replaced with a new governor called Donald Cameron who served from 1925-1931.

- Cameroon straight away instituted indirect rule in Tanganyika.
- He closed the gap between the government and the people.
- He established the native authority ordinance of 1923 which empowered Africans to collect taxes, and minister justice and carry out some executive tasks.
- In 1926, he established the Tanganyika LEGCO of 13 officials and 87 official members.
- Settlers were represented on the LEGCO to share the work of governments.
- Africans were limited to local council and this later provoked the young mission educated against colonial rule.
- In order to win back their support, he gave them land that previously belonged to the settlers.
- The British settlers found it very hard to get labour and when they obtained it, it was very expensive.
- The government fixed wages to safeguard the Africans.
- Many settlers went to Kenya hence reducing the settler's problems in Tanganyika.
- In the land ordinance of 1923, Europeans were not supposed to buy large estates of land, they were only to lease it for one year.
- Land allocation and the soldier resettlement scheme were put up.
- Many Africans were encouraged to grow cash crops like coffee and cotton on their small shambas.
- Taxation was introduced in 1923 to enable the British meet their costs of administration.
- There was improved government provision of social services.
- Transport was developed for example roads were constructed and old ones extended to help communication in Kenya.
- The mining industry was developed at Geita by 1922 gold exports rivaled sisal.
- In 1925, they set up a department of education to supplement missionary efforts. This was to direct and finance education.
- Education was encouraged and schools were built to tame the Africans.
- The British put slavery and slave trade to an end in 1922.
- Political parties were later formed like Tanganyika African Association (TAA) in 1919.
- New system emerged whereby Europeans controlled central administration.
- This was seen later by Africans as a means of preventing political developments of Africa.

Qn. What reforms did the British introduce in Tanganyika after 1920.

THE BRITISH INDIRECT RULE IN TANGANYIKA

- Following the end world war 1 of 1914-1918, Germany lost most of her territories like Namibia, Cameroon, Togo and Tanganyika because she had proved to be a failure with many resistances staged against her.
- Consequently, Tanganyika was given to Britain as a mandated territory and she employed the indirect rule of administration because of the following reasons.
- The appointment of Sir Horace Byatt in 1920 and his failure to bring back Tanganyika to its economic recovery.
- The appointment of Sir Donald Cameron in 1925 and his success with employment of the Africans in administration.
- The success of indirect rule elsewhere for example in India, northern Nigeria, Uganda etc encouraged them to employ the system in Tanganyika.
- The stiff open opposition staged by Africans against the Germans scared the British and therefore resorted to indirect rule.
- They wanted to replace the dictatorial and authoritarian nature of Germans with a more flexible system.
- They wanted to involve the Africans in the running of their own affairs by creating a link between the central and the local government.
- They used indirect rule to bring services like medical services, transport, education and communication nearer to the people.
- It was also to empower Africans in the areas of justice, collection of taxes etc.
- Indirect rule would bring the inhuman slave trade and slavery to an end in Tanganyika and East Africa generally.
- It was a cheaper system of administration in implementation.
- It would help them to overcome communication barriers.
- The low levels of development in Tanganyika made it difficult for the whites to move to some areas.
- They wished to be unique from their rivals the Germans.

- They lacked enough knowledge about the geography of the area.
- It was a soft way through which they would carry out economic exploitation of African resources with minimal resentment.

Qtn.why did the British apply indirect rule in Tanganyika.

CHAPTER 11;EAST AFRICAN RESPONSE TOWARDS COLONIAL RULE.

- Response towards the colonial rule was in two forms collaboration/co-operation and resistance.
- This depended on the circumstances and surrounded the society and the character /personality of the individuals in the society.

COLLABORATION/COLLABORATORS.

- Collaboration refers to the African submission to colonial rule.
- It also refers to the assistance or co-operation Africans rendered in the extension of colonial rule.
- Examples of collaborators in East Africa include Semei Kakungulu, Sir Apollo Kagwa, Chief Lenana of the Maasai, Nabongo Mumia of Kenya, Kinywansi of the Kikuyu in Kenya, Nuwa Mbaguta etc.

REASONS WHY AFRICANS COLLABORATED WITH THE COLONIALISTS.

In East Africa, collaboration differed from society to society and from individual to individual.

Some collaborated because they were ignorant of the intentions of the Europeans. They didn't know whether they were God's messenger or imperialists.

Some chiefs collaborated because of fear of white military superiority. For example, the Maasai, Chagga and Sangu had realized the military might and the strength of the Europeans.

Others collaborated because their enemies had resisted. For example, the Maasai collaborated because the Nandi had resisted.

Some collaborated due to the personal gains and ambitions. These were opportunities like Semei Kakungulu and Apollo Kagwa.

Other societies collaborated because they had been hit by natural hazards which had weakened them. For example, the Maasai and the Kikuyu.

Some African chiefs like Nuwa Mbaguta in Ankole and Kasagama of Toro collaborated because they wanted to strengthen their position.

Other societies collaborated because they are social hence associated collaboration with civilization.

Some individuals collaborated because of the impact of missionary activities in their areas.

The approach by the Europeans also determined the nature of response. For example, in Buganda, the British used indirect rule which made the Buganda chief to assist them.

Others hoped to be assisted against their political enemies. For example, Buganda collaborated because of political threats from Bunyoro.

Some African chiefs collaborated because they wanted to retain their traditional powers and sovereignty.

Qtn. Why did some Africans collaborate with the colonialists in East Africa?

CASE STUDIES'

SEMEI KAKUNGULU.

Semei Lwakilenzi kakungulu was born in kooki around 1870.

He grew up at the kabakas court in Buganda as a page.

While there, he demonstrated that he was a military genius (a good soldier).

After conflicting with Apollo Kagwa, he was rewarded with an area in Bugerere (Kyaggwe) where he confined himself for some time.

He took part in the religious wars and helped the British to defend Mwanga.

He also helped the British against Bunyoro between 1893-94.

Encouraged by the Colonel Tarnan, he was requested to create an empire in eastern Uganda supposedly for himself.

In 1895, he led a delegation of Kumam and Iteso elders to Buganda seeking Kabakas protection.

In 1897, he collaborated with the British to quell the Sudanese military which made him to be awarded with a medal.

In 1901, he established a fort of Bululu for his operations against the Kumam, Iteso, Bukedi and Bugishu.

He used both diplomacy and military power to weaken and disorganize the societies he came across.

He succeeded due to the loyalty of his followers, the Buganda agents and collaborators.

In 1899, he helped in the arrest of Kabalega and Mwanga at Kangai in Lango.

The British later accused him of causing disorder in eastern Uganda and was later sent to Bukedi.

From here, he was taken to Busoga where he became the president of the Busoga Lukiiko.

In 1913, he was removed from office and returned to Bukedi as a Saza chief.

He rebelled against the British and introduced a new religion of Abamalaki.

But he had already established the kiganda mode of administration.

He helped in the development of indirect rule and native administration saza, Ggombolola, Muluka.

He helped to establish road lined with mivule trees in eastern Uganda.

This led to economic development in eastern Uganda because it encouraged cotton growing.

It also helped to attract Indians and Arabs to open trading activities in eastern Uganda.

However, he was dismissed around 1928 and died in 1929 as a disappointed man.

Qtn. describe the life, career and achievements of Senei Kakungulu.

WHY KAKUNGULU COLLABORATED WITH THE BRITISH.

He collaborated because of his failure to get a post in the Buganda government he had been entangled with power struggles with Apollo Kagwa in Kabakas palace.

He had also played a key role in the religious wars which made him to become a general.

The growing influence of the missionaries at the Kabakas court forced him to collaborate.

From 1892, he became an open collaborator of the British to gain fame.

He nursed the idea of becoming a kabaka by establishing his headquarters at Bugerere with the aid of the British troops especially Nubians.

He expanded his empire into Lango, Teso, Busoga, and Bukedi with the British aid to accomplish his hidden motives.

His first posting gave him the first taste of power and created an impetus in him to conquer and rule other areas.

He was, however, an opportunist who expected the material rewards from the British.

Because of his lowly origins, he wanted to earn himself fame and recognition from the Baganda and the Ugandans at large.

His insatiable ambition for power and leadership made him to collaborate with the British.

The willingness of the British to tap the administrative potential in Kakungulu made him to collaborate.

He was part of the indirect rule system to look for shrewd and brave Africans.

He wanted to use his British connections to extend Buganda influence to the neighbouring areas.

Kakungulu was convinced that the only way of fighting Buganda's enemies like the Banyoro was to collaborate with the British.

Kakungulu's failure to get a post in Buganda's government also forced him to collaborate with the British. Sir Apollo Kagwa beat him to the post of being the Katikkiro of Buganda.

It was part of the British indirect rule system to look for brave Africans to use them as tools in the extension of colonial rule hence leading to Kakungulu's collaboration.

Kakungulu also collaborated because of ignorance i.e. he did not know the intentions of the British.

Due to Mwangi's harsh rule, Kakungulu was forced to collaborate with the British. Eg. Mwangi was against the British yet Kakungulu wanted to be their ally.

In 1929, he died as a disappointed man and he was buried in Mbale.

Qtn. why did some Kakungulu collaborated with the British.

RESULTS OF KAKUNGULU'S COLLABORATION.

He helped the British to extend their rule in eastern Uganda like to Teso, Bukedi.

He convinced his fellow Baganda to accept the British rule as a way of securing military help against their traditional enemies the Banyoro..

He built administrative posts in eastern Uganda for example in Mbale which the British later used their bases..

He built roads like the mbale-tirinyi road, bubuulo –nabumaali road, iganga to budaka road etc.

He united the basoga and assumed the presidency of the Busoga lukiiko.

He also trained many local rulers in the same area which helped in the extension of colonial rule.

He also set up medical centers wherever operated like budaka dispensary in budaka.

He planted many mivule trees and mangoes in Eastern Uganda.

He introduced the kiganda mode of administration in eastern Uganda.

He divided the areas into counties and appointed the baganda agents and advisory.

He encouraged the growing of cash crops like coffee and cotton.

He was rewarded with land of mbale for his support to the British.

He encouraged the extension of the railway line to eastern Uganda.

He helped the British to capture mwanga and kabalega in lango in 1899.

Qtn. what were the results of kakungulus collaboration?

APOLLO KAGGWA.

His life, career and achievements.

Apollo kaggwa was born in 1869 into the grasshoppers' (Nsenene) clan.

His career typifies African co-operation with colonial rule.

He served as apage in the courts of mutesa I and mwanga.

He was converted to the protestant faith and played an important role in the construction of namirembe cathedral.

He led the campaign against mwanga and kabalega.

In 1898, he played a key role in suppressing and defeating the Sudanese mutineers.

He played an important role in capturing kabalega and mwanga in 1899.

He was appointed as a senior regent (katikkilo) in Chwa II's reign.

He played a big role in the signing of the 1900 Buganda agreement.

He continued to work closely with the colonial administration especially governor Sir Hesketh Bell.

He encouraged the establishment of schools to promote literacy.

He encouraged the development of agriculture by introducing new farming methods and new crops.

He strongly defended the Buganda traditional institution as he upheld the rights of the Lukiiko as stated in the provisions of the 1900 Buganda agreement.

He played a big role of bringing about financial, judicial and administrative reforms as a prime minister.

During the religious wars, he worked so closely with Captain Frederick Lugard who armed the protestants against the Catholics,

He also played a key role in the signing of the Portal-Mwanga agreement of 1893 which led to the declaration of the British protectorate over Uganda in 1894.

He also helped the British to extend their influence in Uganda i.e. he supported campaigns against Bunyoro.

He also asked the protectorate government to grant scholarships to many promising sons of Buganda to go and study abroad.

He also encouraged cotton growing, mulching of bananas and application of fertilisers.

In 1902, he visited England to attend the coronation of Sir Edward VII and was named as SIR as a reward for his good work for the British,

He advocated for the spraying of tsetse flies around the shores of Lake Victoria and Sir Hesketh Bell did exactly that.

On several occasions, he clashed with the British colonial administration.

He also faced opposition from the bataka and the new generation of chiefs in Buganda.

He also faced opposition from the kabaka chwa 11 who had become of age.

The granting of the beer licence in the kibuka also climaxed the intentions between kaggwa and the commissioners of Buganda in 1925.

By 1925, kaggwa had outlived his usefulness with the British protectorate government and to his own people.

He resigned as the prime minister in 1926 due to the clashes with the British.

He later died in 1927, a year after his resignation,

Qtn, describe the career and the achievements of Apollo kaggwa.

NUWA MBAGUTA.

His life, career and achievements.

Nuwa mbaguta was born in 1867.

As a young boy, he lost all his parents and was left in the hands of his relatives.

Despite being an orphan with a humble origin, mbaguta was always ambitious.

Later, he ran away from his relatives to go and live at omugabe ntare 1 vs court.

As he grew up, he was taken to work as a page at the king's court at mularangira, but he didn't enjoy his stay there, soon he ran back to Ntare's palace.

He was a courageous man since he could even enter the omugabe's bedroom.

Mbaguta became a fearless wrestler, which earned him the nickname of kintinwa the feared one.

Soon, his courage and shrewdness earned him the admiration of the omugabe.

He became one of his favourite pages and was made to join his trusted army unit.

When the British came, he became an agent crusader of their propaganda.

In 1894, he signed a treaty with the British on behalf of Ntare IV.

He led the campaign to construct the road that Sir Henry Johnston used to move from Ankole to Toro.

In 1900, he was made the English Prime Minister of Ankole by the British.

In 1901, he signed other treaties with the British which they pledged to support Ankole against the Banyoro.

Ankole was also allowed to maintain self government and rewarded with additional territories like Mpororo, Igara, Buziba and Buhweju.

He encouraged education by setting up many schools.

He also built churches and encouraged the growing of cash crops such as coffee.

Because of his contribution to the British rule, he was rewarded with a membership of the British Empire honour.

Mbaguta retired in 1933 and died in 1944.

Qtn .Describe the life, career and achievements of Ntare IV Mbaguta.

OMUKAMA KASAGAMA OF TORO .

His life, career and achievements.

He was the Omukama (king) of Toro.

He was restored to the throne by the British.

Omukama Kasagama lived under constant threats from Kabalega for example he was driven out of power in 1893.

Following kabalegas defeat in 1894, Toro gained part of the bunyoros land through the help of the British.

Kasagama was a strong ally of the British.

As the omukama, he did not win the recognition of all the batoro.

There was persistent complaints about his state of affairs.

In 1904, the government prompted by H.E Maddox a CMS missionary, took action.

Consequently, kasagama was recognized as the omukama of toro in 1906.

His powers were increased and even increased the right to nominate his successor.

Tooro moved on the same footing with other kingdoms in Uganda.

But their relationship with the colonial government was not smooth.

The majority of the batooro accused the government of neglecting their areas in terms of development.

They also accused the government of sending some of their territories to Congo in 1911.

In 1900, the tooro agreement had been signed with the British but many of the chiefs had not received the mailo land that had been promised to them.

While kasagama collaborated with the British, there was mistrust and hostility between the colonial rulers and the Africans they ruled.

Omukama kasagama later died in 1929.

Qtn. describe the life, career and the achievements of kasagama.

NABONGO MUMIA.

His life, career and achievements.

Nabongo mumia was born at lukera in 1849.

He came to power in 1882, succeeding his father shiundu.

But his earlier years in power faced a lot of attacks from his neighbours.

He was a peacefull and aliberal leader who established contacts with the coastal trader.

When the british came,he accepted their rule in anticipation of military assistance.

He soldiers were used to fight those who tried to resist british rule.

His capital at elukero was used as the administrative headquators by the british.

The british in return, gave him military assistance to carryout raids against his neighbours like the nandi,luo and the bakusu.

They also built forts in his areas in order to protect it against his neighbours attack.

In 1909,he was made prominent chief(nabongo) of the luyia bof wanga.

He lator died in 1940.

Qtn.describe the life, career and the achievents of nabongo mumia of the wanga.

NYUNGU YA MAWE

His life,career and achievements.

He was aprince of unyanyembe ruling family.

He fled the place in 1865 after the Arabs had beheaded the chief mwana-wa-sere.

He broke away from his people in1874, forming his unit of power at kiwele.

Between 1870 and 1880,Nyungu yam awe from his centre organized expeditions overmost of the kiambu country east of tabora.

He brought under his control the trade routes to the coast and other routes which joined tabora to ufipa and lake Tanganyika.

He formed a strong and centralized system of administration.

He placed his own rule (vatwale) over the conquered chiefdoms and they were directly responsible to him.

However, he did not give these rulers political or ritual powers.

They collected ivory from the conquered chiefs and sent it to him at Kiwele.

The most important of the vatwale was Nyungu ya Mawes, his nephew was Nzwala Minoga Vanhu.

He divided his dominion into 6-7 administrative units each under a mutwale.

The unit cut across the borders of the 30 old chiefdoms, therefore strengthening his centralized administration.

He had an army of mercenaries which was severely disciplined and given physical and psychological training.

They were brave, professional soldiers, ruthless and savage in battle.

He was an diplomat who established contacts with the Arabs and the Europeans.

In 1884, he died and was replaced by his daughter Mgalula.

She ruled successfully until her empire was taken by the Germans.

Qtn. describe the life, career and achievements of Nyungu Yamawe.

RESISTANCES IN EAST AFRICA.

Resistance in the African sense refers to the armed African opposition against the foreign rule /European domination.

These revolts were led by tribal leaders /chiefs who opposed the authority of the Europeans in their areas.

Examples of these resistances in East Africa include;

Kabalega's resistance in Bunyoro (1893-1894).

Abushiri uprising (1888-1890)

Hehe uprising (1890-1898)

Maji-maji rebellion (1905-1906).

Nandi resistances (1895-1906)

Mau-mau rebellion (1952-1955).

CASE STUDIES

KABAKA MWANGA'S RESISTANCE AGAINST THE BRITISH

Kabaka mwanga was born at nakawa 1868.

His father was muteesa 1 of Buganda, who reigned between 1856-1884.

His mother was Nabakyaala Bbisaagi Bagaala Yazze, the tenth wife of his father's eighty five wives.

He ascended to the throne in October 1884 after the death of his father (kabaka Mutees I) and established his capital at Mengo hill.

As a young man, mwanga was erratic, emotional, brutal and weak minded.

He came to power at a time when christian missionaries and Moslems were struggling for domination.

He also looked at the missionaries as a threat to his power and authority.

He failed to play one group against another and therefore was unable to contain pressure from them.

He was also alarmed by the European interests in Africa.

With the support of the British, Apollo kaggwa became so powerful in Buganda that the kabaka felt that the katikiro had more influence than himself.

In 1896, hundreds of pages were sent to the court of mwanga by the chiefs and this increased mwanga's fears.

Religious struggles further increased the tension between mwanga and the British.

Mwanga felt that the whites had to be fought and driven out of his kingdom so that his authority would be restored.

He had lost powers over his chiefs, he could no longer distribute land and allowed to collect tributes from Busoga.

In July 1897, Mwanga left his capital and went to Buddu.

He raised an army with the hope of fighting the British with their collaborators.

Unfortunately, for Mwanga, many Baganda remained loyal to the British for example Stanislaus mugwanya, Apollo Kaggwa, prince mbogo and taibu magato.

Mwanga had raised a force about 14,000 men but was defeated at kabuwoko hill by major Terman.

He fled to Bukoba in Tanganyika from where he surrendered to the Germans.

He was replaced by his infant son Daudi chwa II.

He escaped from the German captivity and returned to Buganda.

Gabriel kintu continued to organize guerilla resistances but was finally defeated in 1899.

Mwanga declared himself a Muslim and joined kabalega in northern Uganda.

The British pursued him in lango and on April 14th 1899, the two kings were captured and exiled to Seychelles Island.

Mwanga died in the Seychelles Island in 1903.

Qtn. describe the life, career and achievements of kabaka mwanga.

KABALEGAS RESISTANCES.

Kabalega was born in 1852 to omukama kamurasi and kanyange in modern toro.

He came to power after the death of father kamurasi.

He was an outstanding leader who resisted colonialism in the 19th century in bunyoro.

He had created a strong kingdom and was constantly attacking the neighbouring areas of ankole and toro.

Bunyoro was a problem to the British who were determined to occupy it.

Kabalega was also determined to maintain his position as a king.

Therefore, British colonial intentions and kabalega's expansionist policy made the conflict inevitable.

Kabalega also had accumulated a lot of guns and had a strong, and well-trained army which gave him confidence to resist the British.

In 1893, colonel Colville invaded bunyoro and kabalega fought on.

The British collaborated with Buganda and kabalega resisted them because Buganda was bunyoro's arch rival.

Kabalega also wished to test his military strength with relation to Buganda-British alliance.

In 1894, a year after declaration of the British protectorate in Uganda, colonel Colville led a force of about 20,000 baganda troops and invaded bunyoro.

After a brief fighting, kabalega was defeated and fled across the Nile to Acholi and Lator Lang.

Lugard restored kasagama of toro and built several forts in bunyoro.

Kabalega continued to engage the British between 1895-99 from across the Nile.

In 1896, bunyoro was declared part of the Uganda protectorate.

In 1899, he was officially overthrown and his son kitahimbwa was installed as a king.

Later in the same year, Kabalega and Mwanga were betrayed by some Lango chief.

They were captured by the British and deported to the Seychelles Island.

In 1923, he died on his way back to Bunyoro at Mpumudde in Jinja.

To many Bunyoro, he was a great hero and they regarded him as their legitimate king right up to his death.

Qtn. describe the achievements, life and career of Omukama Kabalega of Bunyoro.

CAUSES OF KABALEGAS RESISTANCE :

Kabalega had built a strong, well-trained standing army with which gave him confidence to resist the British.

He had obtained guns from the coastal traders and the Kharatoumes which strengthened his forces.

His earlier victory against the expanding Egyptian imperialists led by Sir Samuel Baker motivated him to look for more sources.

His invasion of Toro and dethronement of Omukama Kasagama led him to conflict with the British.

Kabalega also wanted to test his military strength in relation to Buganda – British alliance.

British colonial intentions and Kabalega's policy made war inevitable.

He also wanted to maintain the independence of his kingdom from the European influence.

Kabalega also wanted to maintain his position in the kingdom.

He had the desire to safeguard Bunyoro's culture which was undermined by the British.

He also wanted to maintain control over the various trade routes in the kingdom.

Misfortunes like diseases and famine which disturbed Bunyoro were compounded by the presence of the British.

Kabalega also wanted to protect bunyoro's economy for example trade and other economic resources from the British imperialists.

He also resisted because his enemies the Baganda had collaborated with the British.

Qtn explain the causes of Kabalega's resistance against the British.

EFFECTS OF THE KABALEGA'S RESISTANCE

There was loss of lives during the course of the war which led to depopulation of bunyoro.

A lot of property and crops were destroyed leading to misery and suffering among the local people.

Many people were displaced by the wars as they ran for their safety.

It created a period of insecurity and instability in bunyoro.

Famine broke out due to the scorched earth policy employed by the British.

It led to loss of bunyoro's independence to the British in 1896.

It led to a decline in bunyoro's economy since economic activities were disrupted.

Kabalega was overthrown and replaced by his son Kitahimbwa.

Kabalega and Mwanga were arrested and exiled in the Seychelles island.

Many families and villages were destroyed due to the wars leading to detribalization.

The wars also led to misery and suffering among the people of bunyoro.

The war also worsened the hatred between Buganda and bunyoro since Buganda supported the British against bunyoro.

It also led to the declaration of a protectorate over bunyoro in 1896.

The wars also led to the reinstatement of Omukama Kasagama of Toro.

It also led to the building of several forts in bunyoro to prevent it from attacking the neighbours.

It led to the loss of bunyoro's counties to Toro and Buganda for example the counties of Buyaga, Buluuland and Bugangayizi.

Qtn. What were the effects of Kabalega's resistance.

CHIEF AWICH OF PAYIRA.

Awich was a chief (rwot) of the Payira in Acholi land.

Awich came to power in around 1880s after the death of his father Rwot-Camo.

He came to power when the British were busy extending their rule to northern Uganda.

His constant wars against the Paibona annoyed Major Radcliff who tried to arrest him but failed.

He was suspected of giving asylum to Kabalega's fugitive soldiers.

He was also suspected of giving assistance to Kabalega.

He was asked by the British to expel Kabalega's soldiers which he refused.

A British force under the command of Herman was sent to capture Awich.

In 1901, he was defeated, arrested and imprisoned in Nimule.

Realizing the difficulty of ruling Payira without Awich the British released him and reinstated him to his chieftainship in 1902.

In 1903, Awich refused to sign a treaty with the British representative Colonel MacDonald.

Other chiefs under Payira accepted British rule but Awich persisted in isolation.

Awich once more helped in the inter-clan wars on the side of the Joka clan of the Puranga against the Langis and the Ogoora clan.

The district commissioner reprimanded him and fined him with ivory, ivory and goats.

He was guns from the Arab traders.

He was arrested and taken to court at Nimule to face court charges.

During the court hearing awich lost his temper and hit one of the cout prosecutors –sullivan.

This earned him another fine of two cows and imprisonment in kampala in jan 1912.

His chieftdom was divided inton two.when he retun home in 1919,he was nolonger aruler and his chieftdom were no more.

He was however, instrumental in the spreading of christainity and book learning in Acholi land.

He died in the 1920s , a hero for his role in fighting british imperialism all through he was un successful.

Qtn.describe the life, career and achievements of awich of payiira.

ABUSHIRI REBELLION /AFRO-ARAB REVOLT(1888-1890).

This is also called the coastal rebellion /abushiri uprising /afro-arab revolt.

It was the first resistance against the germans in Tanganyika.it occurred at the coast of Tanganyika between 1888-1890.

It was led by the abushiri bin salim and lator joined by bwana heri.

Arabs, swahils and Africans were also involved.

It was against german imperialism in Tanganyika.

COURSE/ORGANISDATION OF THE ABUSHIRI UPRISING.

Abushiri resistance started on august 8th 1888 when the germans arrived and established themselves in his area.

His people refused the hoisting of the german flag and rioted against them.

The rebellion then abruptly and spontaneously spread to other areas like kilwa, bagamoyo, and the tanga.

Some tribes like the bonda and the zigua also joined the abushiri.

The germans were caught unaware and therefore suffered heavy losses.

Company officials were beaten and driven out of all the coastal towns.

By oct 1888, the geaco Officials were besieged in bagamoyo and dar-es-salam.

After this, von wissman was sent from Germany to suppress the resistance.

He was assisted by zulu, somalies Nubians and the Turkish troops hence the resistance started to crumble.

He first captured pangeni and then moved on southwards to dar-es-salam.

Following the success many Arabs who had supported abushiri opted to make peace with the germans and this weakened the rebellion further.

Smelling defeat abushiri retreated into the interior and hired 5000 maviti fighters.

But these did not save the situation because they were only interested in the looting.

On 15th dec 1889, abushiri was betrayed by ajumbe magaya of usagala who reported him to the germans.

He was captured and hanged at bagamoyo.

He had used religion (Islam) to rally support and get a following.

At first he use conventional war fare but sensing the possibility of defeat, he embarked on guerilla (hit and run) tactics.

He weoponly consisted of local (crude) arms like old fashioned guns, bows and arrows, spears and clubs.

The germans hadsuprioer weapons like machine guns and bombs.

In April 1890, the resistance was crushed and the german government replaced the company as the new rulers of the german east afica.

Qtn how was the abushiri rebellion of 1888 to 1890 was organized.

CAUSES OF THE ABUSHIRI RESISTANCE.

The coatal people wanted to defend their independence against german imperialism.

They were also provoked by the 1888 agreement by which the sultan of Zanzibar sold African coast land to the germans.

To make matters worse,the geaco had also started confisting arab houses.

They were also tired of the over exploitation of minerals and other resources by the germans.

The coastal people were therefore protesting for the loss of their property.

The Africans were suspicious of increased german settlement at the coast.

Some African chiefs had ost their traditional authority to the germans.

The coastal people also wanted to need to protect their economic power.

They considered the abolition of slave trade by the germans as interfearance in the economic life of the Africa.

They were tired of heavy taxation on traders and local People forexample hut tax, pool tax,inheritance tax.

On top of being high, these vtaxes were brutally collected causing further resentment.

The Africans were also tired of restrictions on ownership odf land and property.

The German lacked respect for the cultures and traditions of the coastal people.

They also drank and slept with people's wives which annoyed the Muslims.

They did not for example respect the Muslims time of prayer, fasting etc.

The sacrilegious entry of mosques with their dogs was unbearable to the coastal people.

The German's attempts to steal people's land by the imposition of the new land regulation.

The new land regulation in 1888 that required people to have proof of land ownership.

The local rulers were being humiliated and harassed by the Germans through public flogging.

The Germans dismissed their relatives – the Akidas, and Jumbes.

Forced cash crop growing under several conditions also angered the coastal people.

They applied forced labour to the Africans who worked for their farms.

The harsh methods of administration, direct rule used by the Germans was provocative to the coastal people.

The Germans had taken over the collecting of the mainland import duties forcing the coastal people out of the middleman position.

Qtn. explain the causes of the Abushiri rebellion of 1888-1890.

REASONS FOR THE FAILURE OF THE ABUSHIRI REBELLION.

The lack of military training since even Abushiri himself had never been a military man.

The Germans had superior weapons as compared to the Africans.

The coastal people lacked a united command as many towns fought independently with no coordination among the fighting groups.

There was lack of unity among the coastal people for example Abushiri was betrayed by Ajumbe Magaya of Usagara.

There was lack of a strong sense of nationalism among the coastal people who simply surrendered to the Germans.

Abushiris army was not big enough compared to the large force of the germans.

More of the german army was well trained and well equipped.

This forced him to retreat into the interior and hire the mercenaries but the recruited mercenaries(mavit)did not know why they were fighting.

The germans used ruthless Zulus,somalies nubians and the tukish troops which instilled fear among the coastal people.

In the interior,abushiri was cut off from trade and supply of guns and afollowing.

The fighters were betrayed by some Africans who supported the germans like the zigua under chief mkubwa.

Some tribes easily gave in to the germans which weakened the resistance.

The rebellion was also poorly organized hence leading to its failure.

The coastal power had poor fighting tactics like they used direct confrontation and open warfare which made them prey to the german bullets.

The rebellion lacked anational outlook since it was taken to be an arab revolt hence lacked support from any coastal tribes.

Divisions emerged as the coastal people had different aims of fighting like the swahilis and other leaders wanted to regain other independence (they did not want neither nor the sultan of zanzibars domination.)

On the pther hand, the arabs ,mainly traders aimed at protecting their economic interests and they were not ready to embark on a prolonged war which could ruin their trade.

Famine due to the scarched earth policy forced most people to surrender.

Their was lack of strong economy (poverty) to sustain aprotected warfare.

The topography of the area did not favour the coastal people because it lacked defensive barriers like mountains.

German determination to crush the rebellion at all costs inspired them to fight upto the last man.

The use of cruel method to suppress the revolt which instilled fear among the rebels who decided to surrender.

The germans used surprise attacks forexample wissman quickly ortganised war,which cought abushiri and his people unprepared.

The cruelty of the coastal leaders against those who refused to participate in the war created disunity among the coastal Arabs.

There was lack of leadership especially after the death of abushiri made the rebellion to loose direction.

The surrender of bwana heri broke the camels bark and the rebellion was finally brought to an end.

Qtn.why was the coastal rebellion against the germans were unsuccesfull.

EFFECTS OF THE ABUSHIRI REBELLION.

Abushiri and his people were defeated by the germans.

The rebellion led to massive loss of lives on both sides leading to depopulation at the coast.

The rebellion led to the destruction opf property forexampl e buildings were destroyed.

There was deliberate spread of cattle disease like rinderpest in order to weaken the coastal people.

It led to famine due to the scorched earth policy and the spread of cattle diseases.

Peace returned to the coastal towns after along time of political upheavils.

Abushiris defeat opened up east africa for European colonization.

It taught tribes in noirtern Tanganyika not to bother resisting the germains again.

The sultan of Zanzibar recognized german ownership over the coastal towns.

The coastal towns and the interior tribes ost their independence to the germans.

It made the germans to realise the weakness of company rule.

The germans were forced to chande their system of govornance in traditional rulers in order to cool the tempers.

This was followed with the training of personnel to help in the administration of the area.

It also inspired other rebellions in Tanganyika like the hehe uprising and the maji mai rebellion.

Qtn, what were the effects of abushiris rebellion on the coastal people.

THE HEHE RESISTANCE /MKWAWAS RESISTANCE (1890-1898).

Chief Mkwawa was a leader of the hehe who occupied southern Tanganyika.

He came to power in 1880 after a succession dispute.

His expansionist policy coincided with the German imperial expansion leading to the hehe resistance.

CAUSES OF THE HEHE RESISTANCE.

- Mkwawa was a prominent hehe chief who resisted German colonialism.
- He waged persistent raids against his neighbours and imposed taxes on traders which angered the Germans.
- He was opposed to the mistreatment of his people by the Germans.
- In 1890, Mkwawa closed the trade routes between Bagamoyo and Tabora.
- Then, he sought alliance with the Ngoni chief Chabumba and Isike of the Nyamwezi with the intention of fighting against the German administration.
- In June 1891, Mkwawa ambushed a German force of 1000 men near Iringa killing 300 of them and others escaped in great shock and disbelief.
- In August 1891, the Germans sent military weapons and soldiers to the hehe so as to make peace with Mkwawa.
- In return, Mkwawa sent a representative to offer presents and make peace with the Germans.
- But the Germans thought Mkwawa's representatives had come to attack them, so they killed all of them.
- In October 1892, Mkwawa attacked a large commercial caravan at Mukindale to break German advance into their territory.

- He also attacked Kilosa garrison killing all its occupants.
- To strengthen his position further, Mkwawa built a fort (capital) at Kalenga.
- He hoped to gather his supporters in this fort and prepare them for a war.
- In 1894, an expedition led by Governor Vonschele and Captain John Prince attacked Kalenga but Mkwawa escaped.
- The Germans decided to use scorched earth policy, destroying crops and animals in areas they conquered.
- Mkwawa attempted to ambush the German at Imange on their return to the coast but failed.
- Kalenga was occupied by the Germans who later destroyed it and established a German settlement there. Between 1894-96, the Hehe were engaged in guerrilla war against the Germans.
- In 1896, the Germans attacked the Hehe again and built a fort at Iringa.
- To avoid being captured, Mkwawa decided to commit suicide.
- When the Germans found his dead body, they cut off his head and sent it to a German museum.
- After his death, many Hehe warriors surrendered to the Germans and the Germans were able to establish their control without any interference.
- Mkwawa's head was returned to his people in 1955 after they had complained.

Qtn. describe the course of the Hehe rebellion of 1890-1898.

CAUSES OF THE HEHE RESISTANCE.

Mkwawa wanted to maintain his independence against German imperialism in his territory.

He had built a powerful military state so he refused to submit to the German rule.'

The Germans had stopped Mkwawa's aggressive expansionist raids against his neighbours.

Mkwawa could not live the long distance trade from Bagamoyo to Tabora which the Germans wanted to control.

The Germans despised Mkwawa and called him backward and uncivilized.

The closure of the trade route by Mkwawa following the German refusal to pay taxes led to war.

The German massacre of Mkwawa's diplomatic envoys (messengers) greatly annoyed him.

The Germans subjected the Hehe to forced labour on public works.

Some Germans despised African culture by calling it satanic and barbaric.

The expulsion of the Akidas and the Jumbes mercenaries were resented by the Hehe.

Mkwawa's desire to maintain the Hehe independence also led to resistance.

Mkwawa's opposition to the introduction of the German tax called the hongo.

His resistance was also a protest against the German grabbing of Hehe land.

Mkwawa made the rebellion unavoidable since he was big-headed, arrogant and unpredictable ruler.

He expected support from Chief Chabumba of the Ngoni and Chief Isike of Tabora.

Qtn. what were the causes of Chief Mkwawa's resistance of 1890-1898.

REASONS FOR THE FAILURE OF THE HEHE RESISTANCE.

Chief Mkwawa and his warriors lacked proper preparation for the war.

On the other hand, the German army was well trained and well equipped.

The Hehe did not have enough weapons to fight the Germans.

The few weapons they had were inferior to those of the Germans.

The Hehe also lacked a strong standing army to fight against the Germans.

Some Hehe also lacked a united command. They fought in different groups hence lacked effective coordination.

Lack of unity among the hehe made it easy for the Germans to defeat them./

There was also lack of effective mobilization and co-ordination among the hehe.

The hehe also lacked a strong sense of nationalism made many Africans to surrender for the Germans.

The hehe lacked support from their neighbours like the Ngoni.

The German determination to crush the rebellion at all cost led to its failure.

The storming of Mkwawa's capital at Kalenga greatly weakened his resistance.

The Germans used cruel methods to suppress the revolt which instilled fear among the hehe eg the scorched earth policy, their brutality etc.

The Germans also used intimidation like they cut off Mkwawa's head which made the hehe to fear the Germans and hence surrendering.

The resistance also failed because it was a difficult period of the scramble and partition of Africa.

The Germans hired ruthless mercenaries like the Zulu, Nubians, which made the rebellion to crumble.

The long periods of drought like disease like typhoid and cholera weakened the hehe soldiers.

Mkwawa's poor health made him unable to effectively command the soldiers.

Famine due to the scorched earth policy forced most of the people to surrender.

The hehe lacked a strong economy to sustain a protracted warfare

The hehe also suffered from inferiority complex.

They also employed poor fighting methods like they used the pitched battles, direct confrontations and open warfare.

Poor planning for example Mkwawa concentrated on protecting the capital leaving the other areas unprotected.

Divisions emerged among the Hehe since the people had different aims of fighting.

The rebellion also took too long leaving many of his warriors dead.

Loss of morale among the fighters especially after the death of Mkwawa.

The rebellion lacked leadership after the death of Mkwawa.

Existence of traitors like chiefs who betrayed Mkwawa to the Germans.

Qtn why was chief Mkwawa defeated by the Germans.

EFFECTS OF THE HEHE RESISTANCE.

There was loss of lives during the course of the war and as a result there was depopulation in southern Tanganyika.

The Hehe Africans were defeated by the Germans leading to their loss of independence.

A lot of crops were destroyed during the course of the war leading to misery and suffering among the local people.

The war led to displacement of people as they ran to safer areas.

The scorched earth policy led to the destruction of property and crops in southern Tanganyika.

It also led to the destruction of economic activities in southern Tanganyika hence economic decline.

The Hehe learnt a lesson not to bother fighting the Germans again.

The Germans also learnt that African resistance should not be taken for granted.

They treated the Hehe with respect and regarded them as a master race of East Africa.

With the defeat of Mkwawa, the Germans disbanded his council of advisors.

After shooting himself, Mkwawa's head was cut off and taken to a German museum where it stayed until 1955.

The Germans further punished the Hehe by imposing a heavy fine on them.

Qtn, what were the results of Chief Mkwawa's resistance.

THE MAJI-MAJI REBELLION(1905-1907)

The Maji-maji resistance was an African resistance against the German colonial rule in southern Tanganyika.

It involved tribes like the Zaramo, Wangido, Pogoro, Bena, Matumbi, Mbuga etc.

The phrase Maji-maji refers to the magic water believed to give courage and protection against the German bullets.

The magic water was provided by Bokero Kinjikitile Ngwale of Ngarambe village.

COURSE OF THE REBELLION.

It started when the Matumbi drove out the Akidas and the Jumbes in the areas of Matumbi hills in 1905.

The rebellion spread to the cotton producing areas around River Rufiji, Urugulu, and Mahembe to Kilimbero valley.

The Ngon, Mbuga, Mbogoro, and Thangido were brought together by the traditional religion the Kalero cult.

Kinjikitile Ngwale encouraged the unity of the people by getting the water from River Rufiji and mixed it with sorghum.

This was to provide protection from the German bullets.

He also used a secret communication campaign called jujila.

German plantations, missions and administration bomas and swahili shops were attacked.

Several German planters, missionaries and government officials (akidas and jumbes) were killed.

The Africans used surprise attacks to invade the German headquarters of Mahenge, Kilosa, Iringha and Songea.

On 2nd August 1905, the coastal town of Samanga was burnt and many government officials were killed.

In the same month, the Africans attempted to capture the German machine gun at Mahenge.

The Germans got reinforcements from the Zulu, Somalis and Ethiopian mercenaries.

At the battle of Uwereka, the Ngoni charged straight at the German machine gun. Half of the gun soldiers were killed while the Germans lost none.

The Africans resorted to guerrilla warfare after the defeat of the Ngoni in the battle of Uwereke.

Africans were armed with water, spears and stones.

However, the magic water did not work and many were killed and leaders were executed.

The Germans used the scorched earth policy. For example, they destroyed the strength of the Africans by burning their houses and farmlands.

By 1907, the uprising had been crushed and the Africans were defeated by the Germans.

CAUSES OF THE MAJI-MAJI REBELLION.

The replacement of traditional rulers by the harsh akidas and the jumbes.

The Germans disrespected the local chiefs. For example, they were flogged in public.

The resistance was also a protest against the German arrogance for instance they left their dogs to enter the mosque.

Africans hated the introduction of heavy taxation. The hut tax of 3 rupees on top of being heavy, the cruel methods of tax collection also caused resentment.

It was also a protest against the unsuccessful cotton scheme that had been introduced by the Germans.

People were forced to grow cotton yet they received pay of 35 cents a year.

Africans also hated the forced labour on the communal farms.

Harsh treatment of Africans working on the plantations of the settlers also caused resentments.

The need to regain the lost independence also led to resistance.

Lack of respect for local customs like the German mercenaries raped the Wangido women which was unbearable to the Africans.

The introduction of Christianity by the Germans which undermined the traditional African religion.

The harsh and ruthless administration of the Germans also led to the rebellion.

The Ngoni joined the war to revenge on the Boma massacre of 1897.

Qtn. what were the causes of Maji-maji rebellion of 1905-1907.

EFFECTS OF THE MAJI-MAJI REBELLION.

- There was loss of lives during the course of the rebellion. About 75,000 people died.
- As a result, there was massive depopulation in southern Tanganyika.
- Africans were defeated by the Germans.
- During the war, crops were destroyed leading to famine locally known as fuga-fuga.
- The war led to devastation and destruction of property.
- It led to the wide spread of misery and suffering in southern Tanganyika.

- It led to the displacement of the people from their homeland.
- There was economic decline in southern Tanganyika as people abandoned all economic activities due to insecurity.
- Africans lost confidence in the traditional religion and medicine (magic water).
- They also lost confidence and respect of their traditional leaders.
- Many Africans abandoned their traditional religion and joined the foreign religion like the Christianity and Islam.
- African collaborators were rewarded by the Germans.
- The rebellion inspired future nationalists like Julius Nyerere.
- It led to hatred between those who participated and those who did not.
- Africans stopped violence and tried other means to regain their independence.
- The Germans changed the ways of administration after the rebellion.
- They stopped taking Africans for granted and also started respecting them.
- They encouraged Africans to grow cash crops on their own plantations.
- The Germans stopped employing corporal punishments to the Africans.
- The harsh and brutal *akidas* and the *jumbes* were sacked.
- The white settlers' demand for forced labour was controlled.
- Education was improved as many schools were constructed to promote literacy.
- White settlers who mistreated the Africans were also punished.
- Tanganyika was divided into districts and rebellious areas were put under military rule.
- The rebellion marked the establishment of German rule in Tanganyika.

Qtn. What were the effects of the Maji-maji rebellion.

REASONS FOR THE FAILURE OF THE MAJI-MAJI REBELLION.

- Kinjikitiles' false propaganda of the magic water did not promote immunity against the German bullets.
- Africans were armed with traditional weapons like spears, arrows and stones.
- On the contrary, the Germans used modern weapons like the sub-machine guns.
- There was poor organization before the war. Africans did not make enough preparations before the war.

- There was no military training carried out to prepare the fighters for the war.
- There was lack of unity among the various tribes in the fighting.
- The hehe, chagga and the Nyamwezi did not join the rebellion hence weakening the fighters.
- Africans also fought in different groups with no united command. they had had more than one leader hence lack of co-ordination in the war.
- The scorched earth policy employed by the Germans left the store of the food and the gardens destroyed which weakened the Africans.
- Africans suffered from the scorched earth policy which forced many Africans to surrender to the Germans.
- The Germans received help from the Germans in the form of arms and troops.
- The maji-maji fighters lacked persistence. some fighters pulled out leaving fellow fighters to suffer.
- They also got reinforcement from Zulus, Somalis and the Sudanese.
- The slave traders had also taken away the energetic men and also left only weak ones who could not fight. Africans had weak economies that could not sustain a prolonged war against the rich country like Germany.
- The Germans were also determined to take over Tanganyika at all costs.
- The death of their leaders like Kinjikitile Ngwale, Mpanje and Mputa Gama made the rebellion to lose continuity.
- Many Africans took cover in the bushes which made them easy prey to the Germans.
- The Africans lacked communication since Kinjikitile was far in Ngarambe.
- The Germans used surprise attacks and caught the Africans unaware.

Qtn. why did the maji-maji rebellion fail.

THE NANDI RESISTANCE (1895-1906).

- The Nandi are an Ilchic group of people who occupied the highland escarpments west of the Uasin-Gishu plateau in Kenya.
- By the time the British arrived, the Nandi had frightened most of their neighbours and were unwilling to accept the British authority.

- They were suspicious of all foreigners that came to their land and therefore never wanted any foreigner to cross their land.
- In 1895, a British trader named Andrew Dick quarreled with the Nandi at the boundary country.
- The next British trader Peter West who attempted to cross the Nandi country was killed.
- His murder sparked off the 11th year of war in the Nandi land.

COURSE OF THE NANDI WAR OF RESISTANCE.

- As the Maasai power was weakening at the end of the 19th century, the Nandi power was growing.
- Having frightened most of their neighbours, the Nandi were unwilling to accept the Nandi authority.
- For long, the Nandi had been suspicious of all foreigners and therefore tried to keep them out of their country.
- They even never wanted to cross their land.
- In 1895, a British trader Andrew Dick quarreled with the Nandi on the border of their country.
- In response the Nandi killed a British trader Peter West and most of his group.
- They also made several attacks on the Ugandan road which annoyed the British further.
- The British responded by sending a military expedition against the Nandi. It included the Sudanese and the Swahili mercenaries, Maasai warriors and the Luo porters.
- However the British forces failed to defeat the Nandi because they resorted to the guerilla warfare.
- With the arrival of the railway in 1899, the Nandi often raided railway depots and stole equipments before disappearing to the hills.
- The Nandi also continued their attacks on the Luo and the Luyia who the British were supposed to protect.
- And for 11 years, the Nandi were able to resist British rule in their land. They were not defeated until 1905.
- Their defeat followed the arrival of commander Colonel Richard Meinertzhagen who visited the Nandi leader (Orkoiyot) Koitale Arap Samoi.
- As Orkoiyot came out to meet his visitors, he was shot together with some of his men.

- It was believed that Meinertzhagen had done so in self defence but the Nandi thought that it was treachery and cold blooded murder.
- His death demoralized the Nandi resistance was broken.
- They were removed from an area away from the railway and some of their land was given to the European settlers.

Qtn.how was the nandi resistance of 1895-1906 organised.

CAUSES OF THE NANDI RESISTANCE.

- The Nandi wanted to preserve their independence.
- They never wanted the British to cross their land.
- The Nandi believed in their cultural superiority therefore they wanted to protect their cultures.
- The Nandi also believed in their military superiority .they had a great deal of experience in fighting their neighbours for example the Maasai, Luyia and the Luo etc.
- They resented the British claim of superiority which violated the Nandi integrity.
- The war-like nature of the Nandi also encouraged them because they enjoyed looting and raiding.
- The leadership and the encouragement provided by the Orkoiyot who was the central figure of the Nandi community.
- Kimnyoles prophesy that foreigners will one day rule the Nandi caused resentment to the foreigners.
- He had also prophesised the coming of the iron snake which turned out to be the railway.
- The Nandi resisted being thrown out of their land through which the railway had to pass.
- They resisted because of being forced into the reserve area out of their land.
- The Europeans were viewed to be the female devils because of their clothes and their colour and therefore had to be expelled.
- The Nandi wanted to protect their economic way of life since the British interfered with the ivory trade.
- The Nandi were inspired by other rebellions like Hehe and Abushiri uprising of 1880s.
- The killing of the Nandi Orkoiyot in an shameful incident forced the Nandi to pick up arms in 1905.

- They also resisted because their neighbours the Maasai and the Luyia had collaborated with the British.
- The killing of the British trader Peter West by the Nandi was the spark of the Nandi rebellion.

Qtn, explain the causes of the Nandi resistance in 1895-1906.

WHY THE NANDI WERE ABLE TO RESIST THE BRITISH FOR SO LONG.

- The environmental advantage of the mountainous country with steep and heavily wooded valleys was ideal for the use of the guerilla warfare.
- The wooded area was not suitable for the maximum guns used by the British.
- The wet and cold climate also caused respiratory infections among the British.
- The large number of porters used by the British also reduced their mobility.
- The Nandi had a highly disciplined and efficient army which had a lot of experience in fighting against the Maasai and other neighbours.
- With this, the Nandi were able to put up a strong resistance against the Sudanese soldiers who were employed by the British to fight them.
- They had good military tactics that involved ambushes and other neighbours.
- The Nandi did not have strong defensive points that could have been good targets for the superior British guns.
- The Nandi fought in different companies according to their clans and residences.
- This helped them because in case one company was destroyed, the struggle would continue for the other companies hence prolonged war.
- There was co-operation between the districts in the war through the Orkoiyot religious leader who delegated his prophesy through his district agents Maotik coordinated war effects.
- The Nandi also made their own weapons like spears hence never ran out of the supply of arms.
- They had also acquired guns through trade from the Arabs which enabled them to compete favourably with the British forces.
- The Nandi never suffered from famine and diseases unlike other societies.
- The British also underestimated the strength of the Nandi forces.
- The Nandi were determined to fight and defend their country at all costs.
- The Nandi pride also gave them determination to fight the British for long.

- Being a warrior society, the nandi had a lot of experience in fighting.
- The british lacked geographical knowledge and hence were often misguided by the local people.
- The cutting of the telecommunication lines and the constant raids hindered the transportation of reinforcement of the british.

Qtn.why were the nandi able to resist the british for along time.

WHY THE NANDI WERE FINALLY DEFEATED.

- The murder of their leader orkoiyot koitale greatly demoralized the nandi.
- With the time, the british realized the need of organize stronger expedition eventually led to the defeat of the nandi.
- The superiority of the british forces to enable them overcome the nandi.
- Reinforcement of the british force by swahilis, Sudanese, maasai, gandas etc.
- Lack of constant supply of arms and ammunitions on the side of the nandi.
- The nandi also lacked support from their neighbours like the luyia, maasai and the luo.
- Their neighbours instead fought on the side of the british .
- The nandi clans were also disunited in the battles. some of them decided not to join the war.
- They lacked proper military command structure since they fought into different companies.
- The nandi also lacked proper military tactics to use against the british.
- They had poor weapons like spears and arrows which could not match the superior british weapons.
- The long periods of drought, famine, weakened the nandi resistances.
- The poor economy of the nandi could not sustain a prolonged war resistance.
- The war fatigue on the side of the nandi due to constant wars also weakened the nandi resistance,.

Qtn.why were the nandi finally defeated by the british.

EFFECTS OF THE NANDI RESISTANCE.

- The nandi people were defeated by the british.
- They also lost their independence to the british.
- There was loss of lives since many people were killed during the course of the rebellion.

- As a result, there was great depopulation in the Nandi country.
- The war also led to massive destruction of property and crops leading to misery and suffering.
- There was also outbreak of famine and poverty since economic activities had been disrupted.
- The Nandi also lost their land to the white settlers and the railway line.
- Some of the Nandi were pushed into reserves where conditions were unfavourable.
- Others were forced to migrate to the towns and urban centres to enjoy better life.
- Their defeat enabled the British to finally build the railway through the Nandi land.
- The defeat of the Nandi taught their neighbours a lesson never to fight a white man.
- They realized the superiority of the white man's gun in the battle field.
- The Nandi superiority and arrogance in the region was crushed by the British.
- The Nandi lost their leader Orkoiyot Koitale Arap Samoei who was murdered.
- The Nandi accepted the British rule after their defeat.
- The Nandi taught the British a lesson that Africans could also resist.
- Following the defeat of the Nandi, there was an influx of more Europeans into Kenya.
- Many people in the Nandi land were converted to Christianity.
- The rebellion fulfilled the prophecy of their leader that at one time a foreigner would rule them.

Qtn. what were the effects of the Nandi resistance.

CHAPTER 12: POLITICAL DEVELOPMENT IN EAST AFRICA.

THE 1900 BUGANDA AGREEMENT.

- It was a treaty signed between the British commissioner Sir Harry Johnston and the three regents of Daudi Chwa, Apollo Kagwa, Stanislaus Mugwanya and Zakaria Kisingiri.
- The agreement was signed on 10th March 1900 at Mengo.
- It was part of the British colonial effort to strengthen administration in Uganda for effective occupation.

WHY THE 1900 BUGANDA AGREEMENT WAS SIGNED.

- It was signed to define the position of Buganda within the wider Uganda.
- The desire to have effective control over Buganda also led to the signing of the agreement.

- To confirm that Buganda had submitted to British rule following the verbal declaration of a protectorate over Uganda in 1894.
- They wanted to make Buganda the spring board (starting point) for the extension of colonial rule to the rest of Uganda. After this, similar agreements were to be signed with other areas.
- They aimed at ending the existing political conflicts between Uganda and Buganda.
- They wanted to regulate and define the relationship between Buganda and the British colonial government.
- To find an acceptable way for both Buganda and the British on how to assist the infant king duadi chwa II.
- They wanted to limit and control the powers of kabaka in Buganda.
- They also wanted to end the political confusion caused by kabaka mwanga between 1884-1899.
- They wanted to end omukama kabalega's rebellion against the British in Bunyoro.
- They wanted to end the political-religious wars that were taking place in Buganda.
- They wanted to end the threats of the Sudanese mutineers in the north and thus introduce the rule of the law in the country.
- It was signed to lay a platform to Buganda's political, economic and social development.
- They wanted to make Buganda safe from the missionary activities following the occurrence of the religious wars.
- They wanted to make Buganda self-reliant through introducing economic reforms like growing of cash crops, payments of taxes and use of money.
- The British colonial government was anxious to reduce the administrative costs in Uganda following the collapse of the IBEACO.
- They wanted to clear the confusion and effects of the bad administration of the IBEACO.
- They wanted it to serve as an instrument of colonial exploitation in order to prepare the ground for effective exploitation of the Ugandan resources.
- They wanted to streamline the system of land ownership in Buganda.
- They wanted to answer Bishop Tucker's cries to formalize the Protestants over the Catholics and the Muslims.

- It was also intended to reward the leading Buganda chiefs for their support in taking over Buganda.
- They wanted to introduce political reforms for the efficient administration of the protectorate.
- Buganda seemed to offer an ideal political atmosphere for development.
- They wanted to solve the boundary problem between Buganda and her neighbours like Bunyoro.
- They wanted to follow the terms of the Berlin conference since it would serve as a legal document that would protect and safeguard the British interest in Buganda.

Qtn. why was the 1900 Buganda agreement signed.

TERMS OF THE 1900 BUGANDA AGREEMENT.

- The key terms of the agreement were on land, finance, boundaries and system of governance.

LAND

- Land was to be divided into mailo land (freehold) and crown land.
- Mailo land was to be given to the kabaka, his family members and chiefs.
- The kabaka was to get 350 square miles, princess 22 and the queen mother 10 and the saza chiefs 8 square miles each.
- Each of them was to receive a free land title to confirm ownership.
- Peasants settling on this land had to pay rent (busuulu) to the land lords.
- Crown land was to be given to the protectorate government and public projects.
- Crown land was also to include, uncultivated lands, forests, lakes and swamps and rocky areas.
- People who settled on this land were not to pay busuru or rent.

TAXATION

- All men of 18 years and above were to pay hut tax of 3 rupees.
- These taxes were to be collected by the local chiefs.
- No more taxes would be introduced without the approval of the Lukiiko and the consent of the kabaka.
- Revenue from the taxes was to be for the protectorate government and not for the kabaka.
- The collection of tributes from neighbouring states was to be forthwith.
- All chiefs in Buganda including the kabaka were to be paid a salary.
- The kabaka was to get 1,500 pounds while the saza chiefs were to receive 20 pounds every year.

- All natural resources had to be in the hands of the protectorate government.
- The growing of cash crops was to be encouraged by the protectorate government.

GOVERNMENT

- Buganda was to be one of the provinces that made up Uganda.
- The institution of the kabaka ship was to be retained and reformed.
- The kabaka was to be the supreme ruler of Buganda and was to be given an additional title – his highness.
- Daudi chwa II to be formally recognized as the kabaka of Buganda and kingship was not to be limited to Mutesa's lineage.
- The kabaka was to rule under the close supervision of the British representative.
- The kabaka was to be assisted by three regents namely the Katikilo (prime minister) Omulamumuzi (chief justice) and Omwanika (treasurer).
- The Lukiiko was to have parliamentary powers and was to remain the highest court of appeal.
- Membership to the Lukiiko was to be fixed at 19. This included 60 notables, 20 sub-chiefs, 3 ministers and 6 kabaka's nominees.
- Buganda laws were to remain in force as long as they did not conflict with those of the protectorate government.
- All cases involving foreigners were to be handled by the protectorate government.
- All African courts were not to give death penalties.
- The kabaka was not to form an army without the consent of the protectorate government.

BOUNDARIES

- Buganda's boundaries were to be redefined to include the two counties of the Buyaga and Bugangayizi.
- Buganda was to be divided into two counties, each under a sub-chief.
- Each county was to be divided into a number of counties depending on the size and the population each under its own chief.

Qtn. Explain the terms of the 1900 Buganda agreement.

EFFECTS OF THE 1900 BUGANDA AGREEMENT

- Buganda lost her independence as it became a province within the protectorate.

- Kabaka's powers were greatly reduced by the agreement for example his political powers were reduced to a constitutional monarch.
- He lost power over land distribution in Buganda.
- He lost control over his chiefs who became public servants paid by the government.
- The kabaka was also reduced to an employee of the British earning a monthly salary.
- He also lost his military powers since he could no longer raise an army of his own without the consent of the British.
- He lost his judicial powers since he was no longer the final court of appeal, he could no longer pass a death sentence.
- He lost control over revenue (finance) since all the revenue collected went to the protectorate government.
- He also lost control over foreigners in Buganda since he could not preside over cases involving foreigners.
- The kabaka was also given a meaningless title His Highness.
- Buganda lost a large chunk of land (crown land) to the British.
- The kabaka was no longer rule arbitrarily but was to be assisted by three ministers who included the Katikilo (prime minister), Mulamuzi (chief justice) and Muwanika (treasure).
- The traditional chiefs and clan heads lost their powers for example their traditional functions and privileges.
- It empowered Christian and Muslim chiefs who collaborated with the British.
- It led to the foundation for the signing of similar agreements in other areas like Toro agreement of 1900, Ankole agreement of 1901, Bunyoro agreement of 1903 etc.
- It encouraged the growing of cash crops like coffee, cotton and tea in Buganda.
- It gave Buganda a special position in Uganda since it became a state within a state.
- The special position laid a foundation for Buganda's secessionist tendencies especially in 1960s.
- It also made Buganda to be hated by people from other regions/provinces.
- It led to the introduction of poll tax and hut tax in Buganda.
- This led to congestion in small huts due to the fear of paying taxes which resulted into the spread of diseases.
- Taxes also led to the migration of people to areas where colonial rule was not yet effective.

- The taxation system also became an incentive of hardwork in Buganda.
- The agreement confirmed the lost counties of buyaga and bugangayizias Bugandas which increased bunyoros hostility to Buganda.
- The giving of land to the kabakas chiefs created a class of landlord.
- It also led to the emergence of the bataka federation against unfair land allocation.
- It created a problem of land aristocracy in Buganda leading to the emergence of a new class of squatters/tenants or landless people.
- It ended the religious wars that had destabilized Buganda.
- It re-defined the boundaries of Buganda to 20 counties including buyaga and bugangayizi.
- It laid the foundation for the kingdoms in Buganda.

Qtn.what were the effects of the 1900 buganda agreement.

CHAPTER 13:ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT IN EAST AFRICA **THE UGANDA RAILWAY**

REASONS FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE UGANDA RAILWAY

- The Uganda railway was a line that was built from Mombasa to Kisumu and then extended to Uganda.
- Construction work begun on 30th May 1896 at Kilindini (Mombasa) and George White House was the chief engineer. The Indian coolies provided the labour.
- The work costed eight million pounds far higher than two million pounds that Captain Mac Donald of the Imperial British East African Company had initially estimated for the project.
- Right from the start, the line was called the Uganda railway because the British interests were in Uganda not Kenya.
- To enable the British government to establish firm control over their spheres of influence.
- To provide arms and military personnel into the interior of East Africa.
- To ease British administration in Uganda by making transport easy for the administrators.
- The British wanted to gain access to Uganda for the control of the Nile.
- To eliminate slave trade by providing an alternative means to head portage.
- To make it possible to develop the interior for agriculture and other economic activities.

- To provide an alternative for other forms of trade for example legitimate trade .
- To make transport quicker ,easier and cheaper from the interior to the coast.
- To forestall other powers like the Egyptians and Khartoumers from taking over Uganda.
- To confirm with the aims of the Berlin conference by fulfilling the principle of effective occupation.
- To facilitate missionary activities in the interior of East Africa by making transport easy.
- To promote exploitation of mineral resources like copper, gold etc from the interior of East Africa.
- To link East Africa to the outside world by facilitating international trade.
- To make the economy of East Africa self-sustainable by encouraging economic activities like agriculture.
- To encourage settler agriculture in Kenya by improving on the transportation network.
- To open up the landlocked Uganda to the outside world by linking Uganda to the coast.
- To open up the interior for trade and commerce.

Qtn.why was the Uganda railway constructed.

EXTENSION OF THE UGANDA RAILWAY LINE (1896-1964)

- The construction of the Uganda railway began at Kilindini (Mombasa) on 30th May 1896.
- It was under the supervision of the British engineer called Sir George Whitehouse.
- It involved 32,000 labourers (Indian coolies) and 5,000 clerks and craftsmen.
- By 30th May 1897, the railway line had reached Voi near Taita hills.
- By 1898, the line had reached Tsavo where the workers were attacked by the man-eating lions.
- However they were rescued by Colonel Patterson who hunted them down.
- By June 1899, the railway line had reached Nairobi.
- After Nairobi, the Rift Valley escarpments presented engineering problems to the constructors.
- However, by 1900, the Rift Valley had been crossed and the line reached Nakuru.
- By December 1901, the railway line had reached Kisumu.
- From Kisumu, it was connected to Uganda by a steamship service on Lake Victoria.
- In 1913, the Nairobi-Thika line was extended from Nakuru to Eldoret.
- In 1920, the line was connected to Kitale.

- In 1912, the kampala port bell line was extended to connect kampala to the steamer ship services on lake Victoria.
- In the same year, a line was built from jinja to Namasagali to encourage cotton growing.
- In 1928, the namasagali line was extended to tororo to encourage lime stone mining
- Between 1928-1929, the line was extended to mbale and soroti to encourage cotton and transpotation of animal products
- In 1928, the railway system in kenya was vextended to Uganda from nakuru to tororor to reduce congestion at the port and on the stearmer ships.
- In 1931, the jinja line was connected to the Kampala via river Nile.
- In 1956, the line was extended to kasese to exploit copper and transport it to jinja for smelting.
- In 1961, the line from tororo was connected to jinja.
- In 1964, the sorot-gulu pakwach line was completed to transport cotton and tobacco.
- Qtn. describe the extention of the Uganda railway between 1896-1964.

SUMMARY OF THE EXTENSION OF THE UGANDA RAILWAY(1896-1964)

YEAR	PLACE	REASON	PROBLEMS
1896	Construction began at kilindi (Mombasa)		Language barrier
1897	Voi		Under estimation of the project
1898	tsavo		Inadequate funds

1899	nairobi		Opposition from the british parliament
1900	nakuru		Shortage of labour
1901	kisumu	To be connected to Uganda via steamer-ship on lake Victoria.	Indian coolies were too expensive to maintain
1912	Kampala to port-bell	To connect kampala to the steamer ship	Lack of port facilities
1912	Jinja to namasagali	To encourage cotton growing	Climatic difficulties
1928	Namasagali to tororor	To encourage lime stone mining	Drought and famine
1913	Nakuru to eldoret		Man eating lions
1920	kitale		Tropical diseases like malaria,small pox etc
1928	Kitale to tororo	To reduce congestion at port Kisumu and connect Uganda to kenya	Jiggers affected the indian coolies
1929	Tororo to soroti via mbale	To encourage cotton growing and transport animal products	Hostile tribes like the nandi
1931	Jinja to kampala across the Nile		Rift valley escarpments

1956	Kampala to kasese	To encourage copper mining and transport copper to jinja for smelting	Poor transport facilities
1964	Sorot-pakwach	To encourage tobacco and cotton growing	Poor communication facilities

DEVELOPMENT OF THE UGANDA RAILWAY LINE IN EAST AFRICA MAP

PROBLEMS FACED IN THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE UGANDA RAILWAY.

- The construction of the Uganda railway began in Kenya in 1896.
- Preliminary survey was done in 1892 by J.R. Mac Donald of the IBEACO.
- However work did not take off until 30th May 1896 due to the following;
- There were wrangles between the British parliamentarians who could not see the economic value of the railway.
- The project was too large for the financially bankrupt company.
- The company did not have the funds and man power to undertake the construction.
- The project became too expensive for example, initially it was estimated at 2 million pounds but it eventually cost up to 8 million pounds.
- There was shortage of both skilled and unskilled labour to carry out construction work.
- African labourers such as the akamba were reluctant to work on the line.
- Even the few Africans who volunteered to provide labour did not go beyond their homeland.
- The 32,000 Indian coolies and 5,000 clerks who were imported were also very expensive.
- The Indian coolies suffered from jiggers in their bare feet.
- The coolies and the Europeans were also victims of epidemic diseases like malaria, small pox and sleeping sickness.
- Language barrier also made communication difficult between the Africans, Asians and Europeans.
- The dry and waterless Nyika territory also made work difficult to the constructors.

- The severe drought and famine affected the constructors and even necessitated the importation of rice.
- Floods in some areas washed away railway equipments and also affected the health of the Indian coolies.
- Acts of indiscipline and wastefulness were also common among the workers.
- Wild animals like man eating lions at Tsavo claimed the lives of many workers.
- The eastern arm of the rift valley also presented engineering problems due to the steep escarpments.
- Hostile tribes like the Nandi, Maasai and the Nyika destroyed the rails and telegraph lines and stole supplies.
- There was lack of storage facilities both at Mombasa and in the interior.
- There was lack of transport for the equipment since there were no developed roads.

Qtn. what problems did the constructors of the Uganda railway line face.

CONTRIBUTION OF THE RAILWAY TO THE PEOPLES OF EAST AFRICA.

- Transport and communication from the interior to the coast WAS made easier and quicker.
- East Africa was linked to the outside world.
- Uganda and Kenya were opened up for the exploitation of natural resources.
- It stimulated economic growth since the crops grown could easily be transported for export.
- It promoted cash crop production in East Africa like the growing of cotton in Uganda and pyrethrum in Kenya.
- It led to the urbanization along the railway line i.e. Kisumu, Jinja etc with its associated social problems such as prostitution.
- Kilindini harbor also developed as a loading and off-loading centre.
- There was loss of lives as people who resisted the construction were killed for example Chief Orkoiyot of the Nandi.
- It led to influx of Asians into East Africa; many Indian coolies remained to carry on business.
- Others came as drivers, clerical officers and traffic and station managers hence increasing Asian population in East Africa.

- The presence of many Asians later created political problems especially in Kenya.
- This is because Asians wanted equality with the white in terms of education, employment and representation in the legislative council.
- The railway created employment opportunities for many like drivers, station managers etc.
- It transported rice to the Akamba people who were hard hit by the 1899-1900 famine.
- It eased the British administration because administrators were easily transported.
- It led to the loss of independence of Uganda and Kenya due to the coming of Europeans.
- Africans lost land to the European settlers most especially the Masai and Nandi.
- In 1902, parts of Uganda were transferred to Kenya to give whites suitable land for farming.
- Slave trade and head portage were ended since the line offered an alternative to them.
- Taxation was introduced to recover the costs of building the railway.
- Transport costs were reduced. Transporting a ton of cotton from Kisumu to Mombasa cost only 600 shillings after the construction.
- East African economy was monetized as Asians brought rupees and later paper notes.
- It led to the development of feeder roads to link the line to production areas.
- The Nandi and the Maasai lost land where the line passed.
- The railway facilitated the activities of the Christian missionaries which led to the spread of Christianity and Western civilization.
- Small scale industries like ginneries and copper smelting sprung up. This reduced the bulk of raw materials.
- It promoted international and local trade since it led to the creation of local markets.
- It transformed Uganda and Kenyan economies from reliance on Britain instead cash crops like cotton, coffee, tea etc raised money for the countries.
- It led to racism in Kenya following the coming of Asians and the white settlers.
- It led to the transfer of Kenya's capital from Mombasa to Nairobi which was a more central place.
- It increased the standard of living of East African people.

Qtn. explain the contribution of the Uganda railway to the economic development of East Africa up to independence.

EUROPEAN SETTLEMENT IN EAST AFRICA.

- The white settlers who came to Kenya were from Britain, South America, Canada, New Zealand etc.
- Before 1900, the settlers were living in Kenya on their own initiative.
- However, at the eve of the 20th century, Charles Elliot gave them official encouragement to come to Kenya.
- The British Foreign Office then quickly drew up schemes for settling its excess population in Kenya.
- As a result, many white settlers fought into Kenya and dominated the political and economic life of the Kenyans making it to become a settler economy.

WHY KENYA BECAME A SETTLER COLONY.

- The settlers were attracted by the suitable climate of Kenya highlands.
- They wanted to develop the land through which the railway passed in order to make it pay for its costs of construction.
- The British government favoured the establishment of a new loyal white domination poorly founded on the principle of the British traditions.
- They wanted to exploit African labour which they considered to be idle and unskilled.
- They also wanted to exploit African land since Africans were considered lazy to develop it.
- They were attracted by the fertile volcanic soils for agricultural purposes.
- They were also attracted to scenarios in Kenya.
- They wanted to settle the ex-soldiers of the Anglo-Boer War of 1899-1901 and First World War of 1914-1918.
- They also had a desire to stop the human slave trade in East Africa.
- They wanted to introduce legitimate trade so as to encourage cash crop growing for sale.
- The official encouragement by Sir Charles Elliot also attracted many settlers to come to Kenya.

Qtn1, why did the settlers come to Kenya in the late 19th century?

Qtn2. why were the white settlers interested in Kenya.

EFFECTS OF THE WHITE SETTLER ACTIVITIES IN KENYA.

- The white settlers introduced plantation agriculture in Kenya and they grew important cash crops like cotton, sisal, coffee, tea etc.
- Lord Delamere introduced scientific research to improve on cash crop and live-stock production.
- Local communities in Kenya lost their land to the settlers and they were sent to reserves where conditions were unbearable.
- Their coming also led to the creation of the Maasai-British alliance which crushed other tribes like the Nandi.
- Africans were subjected to forced labour on European farms and government projects.
- They imposed the Kipande system upon the Africans which restricted their movements.
- Their coming led to complete colonization of Kenya as they effectively occupied Kenya.
- Africans were forced to pay taxes in order to pay for the administrative costs.
- Their settlement aroused African nationalism amongst the Kikuyu against the Europeans.
- It led to the transfer of the north-eastern territory of Uganda to Kenya in order to create more land for the white settlers in Kenya.
- Their settlement led to the introduction of racial segregation in towns and schools.
- They restricted Africans from growing cash crops in Kenya since they claimed that they would compromise the quality of the products.
- They also set up companies in Kenya to aid agriculture for example Kenya Cooperative Creameries.
- Roads and railway lines were improved upon for example the construction of the Kenya-Uganda railway.
- The white settlers restricted Asian immigration into Kenya.
- They led to improvement in social services by building schools, hospitals etc.
- It led to the domination of Kenyan economy by the white settlers.
- Small scale industrialization took place for example in 1909, Unga Limited established a grain mill in Kenya.
- They also established the Legitimate Council in 1906 which was also dominated by the white settlers.

- The settlers felt numerically superior and hence started the dominating of africa.

Qtn.how did the activities of the white settlers affect the peoples in kenya.

LORD DELAMERE AND HIS CONTRIBUTION TO THE HISTORY OF KENYA.

- His real name was hugh Cholmondeley,the 3rd baron delamere.
- He first came to kenya in 1897 from south africa while on ahunting expedition.
- He was attracted by the great potential of the country.
- Lord delamere was aproduct of white settler influence in kenya.
- The number of white settlers increased in kenya following the construction of the Uganda railway.
- Lord delamere later returned in 1903 to settle in kenya the highlands which were suitable for the white settlers.
- Lord delamere was determined to make farming asuccess in kenya as he worked hard for its development.
- He spent his personal effort and money on agricultural experimnts in kenya.
- He acquired land at njoro and around lake elementaita for the development of agriculture in kenya.
- Lord delamere experimented on the various types of wheat in the above mentioned areas.
- He also experimented on various breeds of livestock in kenya forexample the exotic breeds and friesiansetc.
- Delamere spent money trying to control diseases and climatic problems in kenya.
- Through research,he was able to contain the ‘rust’disease which had threatened wheat production in kenya.
- He imported pigs,sheep and cattle although many of them died of the east cost fever.
- He carried out cross breeding of exotic and local animals which promoted the resistance of the animals.
- In 1904,lord delamere produced his first successful wheat crop.
- He also helped to develop crops like coffee,sisal,maize tea etc.
- He was instrumental in the formulation of the “master-servant”ordinance of 1906,where the Europeans were masters and the servants were Africans.

- The ordinance made the African interest secondary to the European interest in Kenya.
- Lord Delamere was active in settler politics and led the European settler delegation to the Devonshire discussion in 1923.
- She later died in 1931 during the period of economic depression.

Qtn. explain the contribution of Lord Delamere in the history of East Africa.

ALLIDINA VISRAM AND HIS CONTRIBUTION TO THE HISTORY OF EAST AFRICA.

- Allidin Visram was an Indian born in 1863 in India.
- He came to Uganda as a result of the Uganda railway.
- He began his commercial career in Zanzibar in 1870s during the prosperity of the Indian Ocean trade and the long distance trade.
- He later moved to the interior of East Africa and set up a base at Bagamoyo.
- During the progress and the development of the railway into the interior, he set up commercial posts or centres along the line.
- He was the most enterprising Indian trader of his time in Uganda.
- He bought produce from African farmers like cotton, coffee, tobacco.
- He built cotton ginneries in Uganda (Kampala) to process the cotton.
- He lent out money to Africans and Indian traders in East Africa.
- He introduced the banking system like he built the National Bank of India and Commerce.
- He reached Kampala and established himself as a powerful trader in 1898.
- Allidina Visram established the first shop in Kampala.
- He organized caravans which were sent between Uganda and the coast.
- He established stations along the River Nile and had agents in Jinja.
- His trade was mainly in the export of ivory and cotton.
- He acquired a lot of wealth and invested in oil mines, saw mills and soda factory etc.
- He was a kind-hearted man who gave out donations for example he donated towards the construction of the Namirembe Cathedral.
- Because of his contribution to the economic development of Uganda, a number of streets in Kampala and Jinja were named after him.

Qtn.explain the contribution of alladina visram to the history of east africa.

PROBLEMS FACED BY THE SETTLER FARMERS IN KENYA.

- Crop disease like the “rust”disease which destroyed a lot of their wheat.
- Animal disease like east xcoast fever killed their herds of cattle.
- The mineral deficiency in their soils killed their imported sheep.
- The economic depression made their crops to loose market.
- Their was theft of their food by the pastoral tribes like the nandi,maasai and the turkana.
- The settlers found it difficult to get land for settlement.
- Some areas were barren and un productive which affected crop yields.
- The maasai and the nandi constantly raided their ranches for cattle.
- Initially,their was aproblem of poor transport since roads and railways were not yet developed.
- There was copetition for market from imported products.
- The settlers also lacked funds for their projects.
- Some crops like tea and rubber required large estates which settlers could not get.
- Coming up with the right type of crops to be grown was another problem.
- The settlers lacked labour for their projects since societies like the kikuyu refused to provide labour.

Qtn.explain the problems faced by the settler farmers in kenya.

FACTORS THAT LIMITED THE DEVELOPMENT OF UGANDA AS ASETTLER COLONY

- In 1894, Uganda became abritish protectorate thus was to develop as ablack mans country unlike kenya which was a clown country(for the whites).
- Absence of more land for the whites due to 1900 buganda agreement prevented whites from coming to Uganda.
- Unlike kenya,Uganda had not been explored extensively therefore it did not attract the white settlers.

- The fear of other Europeans because of the puzzling fate of the source of the Nile being in Uganda.
- The labour problem was more serious in Uganda than in Kenya, Ugandans were pre-occupied with small scale cotton growing and food crops therefore were unwilling to work.
- Following the success of cotton growing, the colonial governors emphasised Uganda as a black man's country.
- The missionaries also support the policy of Uganda being a black man's land, hence limiting Uganda as a settler colony.
- The colonial government led by Hesketh Bell in Uganda also restricted the buying and selling of land by Europeans.
- The Baganda mailo land owners charged high costs for their land which was very expensive and could not be afforded.
- The wrong choice of crops in Uganda some time led to failure for example Arabica coffee, rubber, cocoa etc had failed hence hindering white farming.
- Uganda was a land locked with poor communication network which made it inaccessible to white farmers.
- The areas suitable for white settlement were too remote and inaccessible for example Moyo, Elgon, Kigezi and Toro.
- The economic recession of the 1920s and 1930s made it more difficult hence hindering white settlement.
- Lack of outspoken leaders on the side of the settlers in Uganda like Lord Delamere who could pressurize for their plight.
- The Devonshire White Paper of 1923 legalised Kenyan highlands as a white settlers area and not Kenya.

Qtn. what factors limited Uganda from becoming a settler colony.

THE DEVONSHIRE WHITE PAPER OF 1923.

- By 1896, white settlers had started coming to Kenya.
- As a result, Kenya was inhabited by three (3) races; the Africans, the Asians and the white settlers.

- All the races had different interest and demands in Kenya./
- Land and political rights were the main issues in disputes.
- When the colonial government of northernly failed, to solve these disputes, they pleaded the case to the Duke of Devonshire.
- In 1923, he prepared and passed a paper called the Devonshire white paper that dissolved these conflicts.

CAUSES OF THE RACIAL CONFLICTS IN KENYA.

AFRICAN GRIEVANCES.

- They wanted to regain their lost land to the white settlers.
- They wanted good labour conditions since they were tired of forced labour on settler farms and public projects.
- They also demanded for the withdrawal of the kipande* (identity card)
- They wanted to be allowed to grow cash crops.
- They wanted similar education policies like the white settlers.
- They also wanted a reduction in taxes since they were being over taxed.
- They were also opposed to racial discrimination in schools, hospitals and other forms of segregation.
- Africans also wanted to regain their independence.
- They also needed representation in the legislative council (LEGCO)

ASIANS GRIEVANCES.

- They expressed their grievances through the East African Indian National Congress.
- They were also demanding for equal representation in the legislature.
- They also demanded for equal voting rights with the Europeans.
- They were opposed to restrictions on Asian immigration into Kenya.
- Asians also wanted monopoly of commerce and trade in Kenya.
- They were opposed to racial discrimination in schools and hospitals.
- Asians were allowed to live in towns only which they opposed.
- Europeans had been given fertile land in the Kenyan highlands yet Asians were not.

- They were opposed to governor hayes saddlers policy of being too lenient to the sewttlers interest.

SETTLERS GRIEVANCES

- Settlers wanted to turn Kenya into a self-governing dominion under white domination.
- Settlers opposed Asian demands to participate in the political affairs in Kenya.
- Europeans advocated for separate development in Kenya.
- They wanted to maintain white racial superiority in Kenya.

Qtn.what were the causes of the racial conflicts in Kenya upto 1923.

HOW THE ABOVE CONFLICTS WERE SOLVED.

- The differences/conflicts between the different races in Kenya led to the summoning of the conference in London in March 1923 by the colonial secretary who was the Duke of Devonshire.
- The white settlers were led by Lord Delamere and the Asians by Am Jeevanjee.
- Under the chairmanship of the Duke a white paper was passed.
- This became the Devonshire White Paper Declaration of 1923.

TERMS OF THE DEVONSHIRE WHITE PAPER.

- There were to be no more restrictions on Asian immigration in Kenya.
- Racial discrimination was to be abolished and all races were to be treated equally.
- Kenya highlands were to be reserved for the white settlers only..
- Asians were to elect only 5 members to the legislative council.
- One missionary was to be nominated to represent the Africans in the legislative council.
- Whites were not to be given independence in Kenya.
- The colonial office was to be kept close watch over the colony Kenya.
- Europeans were not to have controlling influence in the government of Kenya.
- African interests were to be paramount over other races.
- There was to be no racial segregation in residential areas.

- The legislative council was to be expanded to hold 11 Europeans, 5 Asians and 1 missionary representative for the Africans.
- Kenya was to remain primarily an African country.
- Voting was to be done on communal basis other than the common roll.
- Asians were to be represented on the communal councils.
- All racial groups were to work towards safe governing of Kenya.
- The document was to recognize the contribution made by the white settlers in Kenya.
- Asians were only to stay in towns.
- Africans were to be members on the natives/local councils.

Qtn. what were the terms of the 1923 Devonshire white paper.

EFFECTS OF THE DEVONSHIRE WHITE PAPER.

- All the three racial groups, white settlers, Asians and the Africans were not pleased with the outcome.
- Asians failed to win an equal status with the whites for example they were denied rights to occupy Kenyan highlands hence became disappointed.
- The white settlers lost their dream of over controlling Kenya as a racist colony.
- More whites were attracted to come to Kenya which made the Africans to lose more land to the white settlers.
- It disappointed the white settlers and Asians hope of colonizing Kenya for themselves since Kenya was for Kenyans.
- Settlers resorted to controlling of finance, agriculture and the industrial sector having been disappointed in controlling Kenya.
- Africans and Asians were denied settlement in the Kenyan highlands.
- It led to the increase in the number of Asians in Kenya since it gave them liberty to free immigration into Kenya.
- Africans were more enslaved as they were to continue providing labourer on the settler farms.
- Asians continued to voice their dissatisfaction with the favour given to the white settlers.
- It laid a foundation for future independence struggles among the Africans.

- It denied Africans a chance to sit in the legislative council since no missionary was appointed to represent them.
- It increased instability among the peoples of Kenya as the three groups remained conflicting among themselves.
- The colonial government started training and educating the Kenyans to prepare them for future independence responsibilities.
- In 1931, Africans were allowed to send one representative Mr. Eliud Mathu to the Legco.
- Africans remained discriminated, less paid and exploited.
- Africans were given both commercial and trading rights.
- Qtn. how were the people of Kenya affected by the terms of this paper.

CHAPTER 14: EAST AFRICA AND THE WORLD WARS.

WORLD WAR 1

WHY EAST AFRICA WAS INVOLVED IN WORLD WAR 1

- The first world war 1 broke out on 28th July 1914.
- It was fought between the Serbia, Russia, Britain, France and their allies against the Austria-Hungary, Germany and their allies.
- It was purely an European war but Germany and Britain had colonies in East Africa yet both were major war lords in Europe.
- The Germans were in Tanganyika while the British were in Uganda and Kenya.
- In Somalia and Eritrea, there was Italy.
- East Africa therefore became involved because of the extended conflicts and suspicious in their colonies.
- Since the King's African Rifles (KAR) was a colonial force, it had to fight in defence of its masters' interest.

- The British government wanted to disorganize the Germans before they could attack the British areas of interest.
- The Germans deliberately provoked British colonies with the objective of diverting British resources.
- The strategic location of East Africa led the British to rule it since it would help them to protect their interest because of the war in North Africa and the Middle East.
- Both the Germans and the British recruited the Africans into the army for the war.
- The colonial masters therefore forced the Africans to participate in the war.
- Some Africans however participated in the war for prestige and adventure.

Qtn. why was the Africans involved in the world war 1.

EFFECTS OF THE 1ST WORLD WAR.

- Germans were defeated and had to surrender their colonies to the newly formed League of Nations.
- Britain took over control of Germany East Africa in 1920 and re-named it Tanganyika.
- The number of the European settlers especially of the British origin increased in the Kenyan highlands.
- There was an influx of soldiers and white settlers leading to more loss of better African land.
- The British introduced changes in the local administration in Tanganyika under Donald Cameron.
- The British introduced indirect rule in Tanganyika to replace German direct rule.
- There was growth of political powers among the European settlers in East Africa (Kenya).
- The Europeans started agitating for representation in the government.
- There was serious outbreak of influenza between 1918 -1919 which killed many people.
- There was also wide spread of small pox, plague, meningitis and syphilis.
- There was misery and suffering in many European, Asians and African families.
- Many people were killed, wounded and disabled in the fighting.
- Internal and external trade was disrupted during the course of the war.
- People's standards of living declined as they became poor after the war.

- The war led to the rise in African nationalism as it exposed them to liberal ideas of liberty, freedom of equality.
- Africans attitudes towards the whites also changed since the war exposed the white mans weaknesses.
- They even started restin their chiefs who served the colonial masters.
- It led to economic depression of 1930s which affected the people of east africa.
- The germans who mistreated the Africans were punished.
- There was famine and starvation because of the general decline in agriculture during the war.
- Building of roads,bridges etc were destroyed during the war.
- Ranks and medals were awarded creating aclass of people of ex service men.
- There was increased rate of exploitation of African resources because the british wanted to compasete for the war expenses.
- After the defeat of Germany,Rwanda and Burundi wer given to Belgium as amandated territories to be added to Belgium congo.
- The whole east African territory became the british empire following the transfer of Germany east africa (Tanganyika) to the british as amandated territory.

Qtn.what were the effects of the 1st world war on the peoples of eas africa.

WORLD WAR II

WHY EAST AFRICA WAS INVOLVED IN WORLD WAR II.

- World war 11 was fought between 1939-19445 in Europe.
- It was between Germany,Italy and their allies against the Britain,france and their allies.
- East africa was under the rule of one of the warlords.
- When the war broke out,it was imposible for east africa to remain neutral.
- Moreover,the germans in east africa had conflicting opnions,some supported hitler while others did not.
- There were the british in Uganda ,kenya nad Tanzania and yet back at home they were both opponents of war lords.
- In the neighbouring Somalia and eritria was Italy.

- The presence of such opponents in such areas caused suspicions and tension.
- Several battalions of the King's African Rifles (KAR) were stationed on the Somalia border.
- Troops moved into Kenya joined by contingents from Nigeria, Gold Coast (Ghana) etc.
- East Africa also contributed large sums of money to the British war costs.
- In 1940, Italy joined the war as Germany's ally.
- Later when Japan joined the war on the Germans' side and attacked Britain, the KAR was expanded to 30 battalions.
- Thousands of East African soldiers went to India and Burma while others went to Madagascar.
- The KAR was used because of their good performance in the 1st world war and the need to protect British interests in the Far East.

Qtn. why was East Africa involved in the world war II.

EFFECTS OF WORLD WAR II ON THE PEOPLES OF EAST AFRICA

- Many Kenyans fought in the war and they served in the Middle East, Burma, India, Somalia etc.
- They fought side by side with the Europeans, Indians and the Arabs.
- European superiority was demystified.
- They expanded their horizons from the new lands and the people.
- While in the army, they learnt how to read and write in English, others learnt technical skills.
- After the war, the ex-service became more critical and they were less prepared to submit to subordination.
- They demanded for the better conditions of the Africans.
- Several ex-service men became leaders of nationalist movements for example Isaac Gathanjui, Dedan Kimathi, Kagame Mwangaru, Wanjiru (General China).
- Anti-colonial movements overseas gave encouragement and support to the Africans in the struggle Mau Mau.
- There was loss of lives of the people of East Africa leading to depopulation.
- The war experiences led to the rise of nationalism among the East Africans.

Qtn. what were the effects of world war II on the peoples of East Africa.

CHAPTER15: THE STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE IN EAST AFRICA

THE MAU-MAU REBELLION IN KENYA(1952-1960)

- The mau-mau was an African revolt against colonial rule in Kenya.
- Mau-mau means “muzungu ayende ulaya mwafrica apate uhuru”let the Europeans go to Europe and Africans acquire their independence.
- It was organized by the ex-service men, members of the KAU and later joined by Jomo Kenyatta, Tom Mboya, General China (Wahuiyoti) etc.
- The war effectively began in 1952-1960.

CAUSES OF THE MAU-MAU REBELLION

- The Kikuyu were fighting to regain the political independence.
- They wanted to regain the land they had lost to the white settlers especially in the highlands.
- Africans had been pushed to reserves where they experienced overstocking, overpopulation in the reserves.
- Africans hated racial segregation of jobs, residential areas and education, institutions etc.
- They also hated social degradation of Africans by the whites since they were considered to be the 2nd class citizens.
- The Africans were poor while the whites and Asians were rich because they monopolized trade.
- The Kikuyu were tired of forced labour on the European farms.
- Africans were restricted from growing cash crops on the pretext that this would lower the quality of products.
- Reluctance of the British to effect constitutional reforms in Kenya since Africans hated the continued domination of the government by the whites.
- The lack of direct African representation in the LEGCO provoked them since they were being represented by an appointed missionary.

- Africans therefore wanted to be allowed to participate in the politics of Kenya.
- Africans also hated the imposition of heavy taxes and the harsh methods of tax collection.
- Grievances like lack of jobs for the educated and general unemployment also led to the mau-mau rebellion.
- Africans hated interference in the traditional customs and beliefs like they hated the ban on women circumcision.
- The fear of Kenya becoming another South Africa/Rhodesia because of the racial segregation.
- Africans hated the massive arrests, detentions and ruthlessness of the British.
- Africans were also provoked by the deliberate reduction of the number of their cattle by the white settlers.
- The role of the educated elites like Jomo Kenyatta who provided skill leadership to the revolt in the 1950s.
- Africans also hated restrictions of movements by use of kipande system which was burdensome to them.
- The fighters were also inspired by the belief of traditional religion which gave them courage.
- The return of World War I veterans with new ideas and grievances for independence also inspired many Kenyans to join the fighters.
- Africans were also inspired by earlier resistances like Abushiri resistance, Maji Maji rebellion etc.
- Africans also hated the introduction of Christianity which undermined African traditional religion.

Qtn. What were the causes of the Kikuyu uprising of 1952-1960.

ORGANISATION OF THE MAU-MAU REBELLION.

- It started as an underground movement aimed at driving away Europeans out of Kenya.
- The supporters took oath that bound them to obedience, secrecy and support to the movement.
- As fighting intensified, the oath grew more and more horrible and terrifying.
- Death penalty was inflicted on those who were thought of betraying the movements.
- It was a tribal movement and never spread beyond Kikuyu land.

- The movements had its headquarters in Nairobi where orders and supplies were issued to the fighting wings.
- The mass of people provided food, shelter and information to the armies in the forest.
- The movements comprised of ex-soldiers who fought in the world war 1, squatters in the European farms and willing youth.
- The movement was masterminded by the youth who fought in about 40 different groups.
- The young kikuyu youth trickled to the forest of abardares and the slopes of mt.kenya and their number swelled instead stream under increasing pressure.
- They used guns and local weapons like spears arrows, pangas etc.
- They took to surprise night attacks guerilla warfare and retreated into the forest that remained as their bases.
- In their hide outs, they formed gangs, launched their attacks where they could strike terror or steal arms and amunitions.
- The movement was characterized by cattle theft, crop destruction murder of kikuyu and a number of settlers on the isolated farms.
- Many chiefs who opposed the movement were hatched to death like nyeri, waruhei of kiambu. many European victims were chosen from those who had done the greatest service to the tribe. it was aimed at destroying former loyalties.
- Many mau-mau sang blasphemous hymns to well known tunes in which the name of Kenyatta was substituted for Jesus Christ. these hymns tunes were even taught in schools.
- Great emphasis was placed upon a show of reverence for the common ancestors of the tribes like kikuyu and mumbi and for their god ngai.
- The kikuyu tried to get support from other tribes but they were not successful.

Qtn. How was the mau-mau rebellion of 1952-1960 organised.

EFFECTS OF THE MAU-MAU REBELLION.

- Both the Africans and the Europeans lost their lives. about 1300 Africans and 53 Europeans died.
- It led to declaration of a state of emergency in kikuyu by the colonial government in 1952.

- Many Africans like the kikuyu, akamba, embu and meru were forced into reserves and detention camps.
- Leaders of the revolt like jomo Kenyatta, kimathi, and the itote were arrested.
- Many supporters were arrested for example 2,600 kikuyus were arrested in april 1954.
- The rebellion led to the destruction of property and disruption of agriculture.
- As a result, it led to the outbreak of famine leading to misery and suffering.
- Insecurity created by the revolt disrupted trade and other economic activities leading to the decline of kenya's economy.
- Clans and families disintegrated due to either being loyal or unloyal to the fighters.
- Prisoners of war suffered harsh treatment and bad living conditions.
- The war was costly on the side of both kenya and Britain since it costed them about 50,000 pounds.
- After the war, many Europeans started opposing colonialism and criticised Britain and the white settlers.
- The white settlers were forced to give up the idea of kenya as a white man's country.
- It also quickened kenya's progress towards the attainment of their independence.
- The british government came to good terms immediately with the Africans and the white settlers.
- Kenyatta and other mau-mau leaders were released to participate in the government.
- African interest gained supremacy over Asians and white settlers' interests.
- It also led to the exodus of white settlers to south africa.
- Political parties that had been banned were allowed to operate again.
- It strengthened the growth of nationalism in kenya.
- Africans were allowed to sit on the legislative council. by 1956, 5 africans were allowed and the number increased to 14 in 1958.

Qtn. What were the effects of the mau-mau rebellion.

THE RISE AND DEVELOPMENT OF NATIONALISM IN EAST AFRICA.

- Nationalism refers to the rise of consciousness and love for ones,country .in africa,it was the desire for independence,self dertermination and self hatred to all evils associated with colonial rule,.
- In east africa,nationalism was characterized mainly by the rise or formation of political parties (UPC,DP and in uganda ,KANU,KADU in kenya.and in Tanzania there was TANU and the popular demand for independence.

CHARACTERISTICS OF NATIONALISM IN EAST AFRICA.

- Nationalism in east africa was characterized by anumber of feature swhich included;
- It was characterized by the rise of political parties .these included;Uganda national congress (which lator became Uganda peoples congress)UPC,democratic party DP,as well as KANU (kenya African national union)in kenya among others.
- Nationalism in east africa was led by the few educated Africans like Julius nyerere,Milton obote ,Mayanja nkangi ,jomo Kenyatta ,tom mboya and others.
- Most of the nationalistic activities were centered in towns like Nairobi,Mombasa,dar-es-salaam,Dodoma,kampala and Entebbe.
- Violet groups were formed to engage the colonialists by force .the most important of these was mau-mau in kenya (1952-60).
- There was constant arrests and detention of nationalists leaders .kenyatta was imprisoned in 1953,obote forced out of makerere collage ,nyerere and many others too were detained several times.
- Nationalism in east africa had some Africans supporting whites and hence opposeds to ideas like granting independence to Buganda.
- The cold war conflict remained clear among the east African nationalists.nyerere foristance adopted the socialist ideology through his popular ujamaa policy.
- The press became akey tool of nationalism in east africa.newspaperrs like MUNNO ngaba(Uganda)radio staions and magzines were used in the spread of nationalistic ideas.
- Negotiations also characterized African nationalism in east africa .costitutional reforms were carried out such as the constitutions in kenya like the lennox-boyd constitution.
- Trade unions wre formed to call for workers rights .forexample the young kikuyu ass0ciation in kenya in 1921.

FACTORS FOR THE RISE AND DEVELOPMENT OF NATIONALISM IN EAST AFRICA.

- East Africa's involvement in the 1st world war exposed them to western culture and civilization.
- The return of world war 1st ex service men strengthened the hostility towards the colonial rule.
- The ex-service men who had fought alongside the whites had begun to doubt their superiority.
- Several ex-service men became leaders of national movements for example General Chuma.
- The ex-service men came back with the ideas of equality, liberty and independence.
- The formation of the United Nations and its anti imperial policy greatly inspired the nationalists.
- Negro movements outside Africa for example the 1945 Pan African Congress held in Manchester and attended by major African nationalists like Jomo Kenyatta gave morale to the nationalists in East Africa.
- The emergence of an educated class of people (elites) who could read newspapers, listen to radio etc helped to spread the nationalistic ideology.
- The high level of unemployment made Africans form mass political movements.
- The influence of the Christian missionaries gave Africans courage to rise up their own rights.
- The signing of the 1941 Atlantic Charter which advocated for self government also accelerated the temper for nationalism.
- The granting of independence to India and Pakistan in 1946, marked the beginning of the forces of nationalism.
- The return of educated African leaders who had been studying from abroad like Julius Nyerere with liberal ideas.
- The development of national language like Swahili by Tanganyika and English by Kenya and Uganda created unity among Africans.
- The rise of prominent communist countries like USSR and China which were anti-colonialism inspired nationalism in East Africa.

- Criticism and opposition to imperialism was widely publicized and this gave moral support to the nationalists.
- The rise of USA and USSR which put pressure on colonial powers to decolonize inspired nationalism in east africa.
- The growth of pan Africanism which advocated “africa for Africans” gave morale to the nationalistic movements.
- The need to fight colonialism with all its evils like forced labour, over taxation, loss of independence provoked Africans to demand for their independence.
- Loss of land especially in Kenya inspired the mau-mau nationalistic movements under the kikuyu.
- The rise of trade union due to the rise in the cost of living after the war. The trade unions supported and financed the nationalistic movement.
- The independence of Ghana in 1957 and the emergence of Kwame Nkrumah also increased the pace for self rule in Africa.
- The role and support of Africans in the diaspora like Nkrumah inspired nationalists in East Africa.
- The influence of the Egyptian revolution in 1952 under Nasser who supported the mau-mau.
- The domination of trade by the Asians /Indians provoked the Africans to demand for their independence .
- Urbanisation ,the rise and growth of many urban centres created employment opportunities for the Africans and therefore broke tribal ties and created nation wide demand for independence.
- Migration of people from villages to towns also exposed them to new ideas leading to the growth of nationalism.
- The existence of segregation against Africans especially in Kenya became a tool for nationalistic attitude on colonialism.
- The mass political formation and awareness of political parties increased the pace of nationalism in East Africa.

Qtn. explain the factors that led to the rise and development of nationalism in East Africa between 1945-1960.

PROBLEMS FACED BY THE NATIONALISTS IN EAST AFRICA.

- Tribal differences and disagreements among the various tribes made it difficult to rally people for a common goal.
- There was lack of nation-wide support since some political parties were considered to be tribal groupings for example the mau-mau.
- Insufficient funds to fund the nationalistic movements.
- Hostility of the colonial government which discouraged and even banned political parties like KANU and KADU.
- Lack of proper organisation both at local and national levels.
- Difficulty of communicating with a large scattered population since there were no developed transport routes.
- Lack of a common language made it difficult to spread nationalistic ideas.
- Withdrawal of supporters from their sympathisers due to the violent methods used by the nationalists for example in the mau-mau rebellion.
- Arbitrary arrest and detention of the ring leaders like Jomo Kenyatta, General Chionga etc reduced their efficiency.
- The nationalistic movement failed to preserve unity like in Kenya KANU mainly attracted the Kikuyu, the Luo and the Akamba while KADU embraced small tribes in Kenya.
- Differences in political ideologies like in Kenya KANU favoured unitary government while KADU favoured a federal type of government.
- Religious differences created disunity among the different groups.
- Some political parties were even formed along religious lines which proved a big problem.
- Presence of collaborators who could inform the whites on what the Africans were trying to do.
- Limited supply of guns which could be used in wars.
- Differences in the methods to be used in attaining of the independence whether violence or diplomacy.
- The high levels of illiteracy made it difficult to spread nationalistic ideas.
- Poor transport and communication slowed down the activities of nationalists.

- Urbanization broke tribal ties among the Africans which created difficulty in forging national unity.
- Absence of capable and acceptance leaders who could spearhead the national movements.
- The banning of the political parties by the colonial government for example KANU and KADU in Kenya affected their effectiveness.
- Inferiority complex among the Africans kept many Africans out of politics.
- The nature of ethnic composition in East Africa was difficult to bridge.
- The banning of civil servants from participating in the politics kept many people away from politics.
- Conflicts and quarrels among the leaders of the national movements caused rivalry and disunity.
- The domination of political life by the Europeans and the Asians made Africans poor and isolated from politics for a long time.

Qtn. what problems did the nationalists face in East Africa.

FORMATION OF POLITICAL PARTIES IN EAST AFRICA.

- A political party is an association of persons whose major aim is acquiring state power.
- Political parties in East Africa included, the Kenyan African National Union (KANU), Kenya African Democratic Union (KADU), Tanganyika African National Union (TANU), Uganda National Congress (UNC), Uganda Peoples Congress (UPC) etc.
- Most of these political parties were formed and dominated by the educated Africans.
- They began with limited and local complaints against colonial rule but soon grew and became national in outlook.

WHY POLITICAL PARTIES WERE FORMED IN EAST AFRICA

- They were formed to fight for the independence of the respective countries.
- They aimed at demanding for greater representation on the legislative councils.
- They wanted the extension of the voting rights to the Africans since they had been denied the right to vote.

- The rise of pan Africanism also influenced Africans to form political parties since they wanted to rule themselves.
- Colonial rule with its evils like loss of land,forced labour,forced cash crop growing etc forced Africans to form political parties.
- They were formed to fight against African exploitation of resources like land,labour and minerals.
- The influence of world war 11 was also a factor in the formation of political parties.africans who fought in the war came with the zeal to liberate their fellow Africans.
- They were formed to fight for the release of imprisoned nationalists forexample KANU was formed to press for the release of Kenyatta.
- They were formed as a platform for airing out African discontent against European rule.
- The high levels of poverty and unemployment also forced the ex-service men to form political parties.
- The rise of African nationalism in the late 19th century was also manifested in the formation of political parties.
- They were also formed to fight racial segregation forexample in education, health and employment.
- They were also demanding for the removal of restrictions on growing cash crops, trade and free movements.

Qtn.what led to the formation of political parties in east Africa.

ROLE PLAYED BY POLITICAL PARTIES IN THE ATTAINMENT OF INDEPENDENCE IN EAST AFRICA.

- They contributed to the attainment of independence in their respective countries in the following ways.
- Through boycotts, demonstrations and riots, they demanded for the immediate advance towards self rule.
- They fostered unity and brought different peoples and tribes together.
- They fought for freedom in their respective countries.
- They led to the recognition of their countries internationally.

- They for equality of all races and the establishment of multi-racial government.
- They acted as a platform for explaining the colonial ills to the people especially in local languages.
- They contributed to the development of infrastructures like roads, schools, hospitals, railways and ports.
- As a result of their pressure, Africans were able to get white collar jobs.
- They contributed to the attainment of republican status by the east African states for example Uganda in 1963, and Kenya in 1965.
- They led to the establishment of adult universal suffrage in Uganda in east Africa.
- They educated the masses about their rights in their respective countries.
- They contributed to the freeing of political prisoners like Jomo Kenyatta of KANU.
- They contributed to the development of agriculture like they played a big role in the establishment of busitema agricultural college and kibimba rice scheme in Uganda.

Qtn. explain the role played by political parties in the attainment of independence in east Africa.

NATIONALISM IN UGANDA.

- Between 1945, and 1949, several protests and uprisings were organized especially in Uganda towns like Kampala. These were mainly in opposition to the monopoly of Asians in the cash crop trade, land alienation among other grievances.
- Such actions resulted into formation of earlier political associations such as ;
- Bataka party (1946)
- Abaganda abakopi and Uganda African farmers union (1947)
- Buganda African motor driver union (banu)
- Although all these parties were silenced one by one by the colonialists, and their leaders were arrested, the message of resistance and desire for independence had been expressed already.

THE KABAKA CRISIS OF 1953-55.

- Following the British introduction of the idea of the east African federation Kabaka Mutesa II decided to mobilise the Baganda to reject the federation.

- He also went ahead to demand for the independence of Buganda alone.
- This prompted the British colonial governor Andrew Cohen to deport him into Britain on the 30th of Nov 1953.
- This came to be known as the kabaka crisis of 1953-55 in Buganda.

CAUSES OF THE KABAKA CRISIS.

- The idea of the east African federation led to the crisis. the baganda feared that they might lose their land in the federation as had happened in Kenya.
- Muteesa I's failure to co-operate with the colonial administrators encouraged the crisis. according to the 1900 agreement, the kabaka was expected to work (co-operate) with the colonial administrators in areas of tax collection, law and order etc.
- Muteesa's demand for Buganda independence also led to crisis.
- Kabaka Muteesa's desire to adjust some terms of the Buganda agreement led to the crisis. kabaka hated the clauses that limited his authority in Buganda.
- The rising sense of superiority among the baganda encouraged the crisis under Muteesa II. the baganda increasingly became proud of themselves that decided to reduce co-operation with the colonialists.
- Withdrawal of support from the kabaka by the lukiko also encouraged the crisis.
- The transfer by the colonial governor of the nomination of buganda's representatives to the legco (legislative council). this decision to give powers to the lukiko to nominate representative to the legco proved Muteesa II much.
- The religious conflicts in Buganda also increased the tension. the catholics conflicted with the protestants and the Christians combined against moslems. this drew in the colonial administration to take sides.
- The new political parties like Uganda national congress 1952 violently opposed the east African federation idea. this further prompted the government to exile the king.

Qtn. explain the causes of the 1953 kabaka crisis.

EFFECTS OF THE 1953 KABAKA CRISIS.

- Created a sense of unity among the baganda as they combined efforts to demand for the return and restoration of kabaka Muteesa II.

- It led to the signing of the namirembe agreement. this cleared way for the return of the kabaka while also reducing the kings powere more.
- Demonstrations were carrid out in Buganda areas like nakulabye. men vowed never to shave off until their king is back.
- The colonial; government appointed more Africans to the colonial administration.
- Encouraged the growth of nationalism in the whole of ugand. the crisis had showed Ugandans the dertermination of colonialists to stay on hence more demands for independence.
- Led to the formation of new political parties which began by demanding of the return of kabaka and finally for independence.
- The crisis and the namirembe agreement affected the position of the kabaka. his reduced powers as we approached independence laid ground for his eventual over throw in the 1966 crisis with obote. m.
- The idea of east African federation was completely ruled out after the crisis.
- inreased the popularity of the kabaka especially among the baganda as well as other areas of uganda.

Qtn. what were theb effects of the 1953 kabaka crisis.

POLITICAL PARTIES IN UGANDA AFTER 1950.

- After 1950, anumberv of political parties were formed or old ones revised.
- These were to lead the way towards ugandas independence by 1962.
- Sucn parties included;
- Uganda national congress(unc)1952
- Democratic party(dp)1954
- The progress party (pp)1955
- United congress party(ucp)1957
- Uganda national movement (unm)1959
- Uganda peoples union (upu)1958
- Uganda peoples congress(uoc)1960
- The kabaka yekka (ky)1962.

ROLE PLAYED BY POLITICAL PARTIES IN THE STUGGLE OF UGANDAS INDEPENDENCE.

- Parties trained leaders who helped to mobilise the masses in the demand for independence.
- They sensitized and educated Ugandans on the politics in the country.this aroused politicalawareness in Uganda.
- Called for the independence of Uganda raising massive support to the independence movement.
- Organized peaceful demonstrations against colonial policies like cash crop growing,taxation etc.
- Parties sent representatives in the pre-independence negotiations and last minutes constitutional preparations.
- Mo\bilised funds to finance political activities including campaigns for the pre-independence elections.
- Party slogan and songs became akey symbol for attraction for large gatherings.this made flow of information about the struggle very easy.
- Recruited the youth into active party services thus training ageneration that was to lead Uganda to independence like Mayanja nkangi,ignitius musaazi etc.
- Violet actions organized by the various parties pressurized the colonialists to grant independence.boycotts,attacks on foreigners and torching(burning)houses all speede up the process of decolonization of Uganda.
- Qtn,explain the role played by the political parties in the attainment of the bugandas independence.

FACTORS WHICH FACILITATED THE ATTAINMENT OF INDEPENDENCE IN UGANDA.

- Many factors worked in favour of the rise and growth of nationalism in Uganda.its these factors that eventuarry led to the early independence of Uganda by 1962.they included;
- The impact of the 11 world war 1939-45 led to ugandas indepenence.ex-soldiers came back with military skills and militant ideas leading to violet actions like burning of the white owned houses.

- The rise of labour party into power in Britain in 1945 also favoured ugandas struggle for independence.this led to the appointment of some Ugandans on the legco.
- The Manchester of 1945 helped nationalism in Uganda.its call for use of all means including force to fight for independence led to use of tricks in demand for independence.
- Western education (cespecially through missionary schools)trained leaders for the independence movement.forexample musaazi,m.obote,Mayanja etc.
- The roads,railway line and other forms of infrustructures proved by the colonial administration helped the struggle.nationalists like obote used these to traverse the whole of Uganda for support.
- The formation of political parties led to the independence.parties like ky,upc,dp and unc mobilized the masses in the demand for independence.
- The continued exploitation byasians and whites of ugandas resources like copper in kilembe provoked hunger among the Ugandans.
- The development of urban centres like jinja,kampala favoured nationalism in ugana.these became laeding grounds for political activities like rallies and demonstrations.
- Asian countries which had already got their independence (1947)helped Uganda too.some Ugandan nationalists like abu Mayanja,bidandi Sali etc.studied in india or attended confereences there.
- The 1952,revolution in Egypt also influenced nationalism in Uganda.
- Nasser,the new president of Egypt assisted Ugandans like ignituis musaazi of unc .
- The united nations organization also put pressure on the british to decolonize even Uganda.
- The brish policy of favouring buganda morethan the rest of Uganda .this made the rest if ugandans to unit against the baganda first and finally the colonialists too.
- Ghans early independence in 1957 also inspired the strong demand for independence in Uganda too.

Qtn.what factors facilitated the attainment of ugandas independence.

MAJOR OBSTACLES IN THE STRUGGLE FOR UGANDAS INDEPENDENCE.

- The struggle for ugandas independence and generally the growth of African nationalism in Uganda was delayed/disturbed by anumber of factors.

- The high levels of illiteracy in Uganda affected the struggle. the few educated people in Uganda had between 1945-50 were mainly centered in Buganda only. this left the rest of the regions to struggle for so many years.
- The lack of common language in Uganda also disturbed the struggle for independence. like Luganda, Acholi etc were used by different groups to push for their tribal interest. this promoted the divide and rule policy of the colonialists.
- Trade union activities were limited in Uganda. the restrictions by colonialists had discouraged formation of trade unions which would have helped in the demand for independence.
- The limitations of the press delayed the struggle. the few newspapers like Uganda eyogera were in Luganda hence only read by Baganda.
- This isolated the other Ugandans from ideas in the paper.
- Some of the elites were puppets of the British colonial government and hence could not join political parties like UPC, UNC etc.
- The delay to establish contacts between nationalists in Uganda and outside Africa also delayed the struggle. very few Ugandans had travelled to democratic states like USA to borrow the spirit of freedom and hence few would challenge colonialism as an abuse of human rights.
- The formation of political parties delayed independence.
- Active party politics did not come until after 1950.
- Religious divisions between Protestants and Catholics also affected the struggle. parties never combined efforts because of the differences in the religion.
- The common hatred towards the Baganda by nationalists from other parts prevented a united stand against colonialism. the fact that the British had used Baganda chiefs like Semei Kakungulu to speed to the east made Baganda and target by others.
- The secessionist attempts by Buganda delayed the struggle. with much of the infrastructures, the attempt to break off from the rest of Uganda was unacceptable by other nationalists hence preventing a common front against colonial rule.
- There were also ideological differences even within the different political parties. where the DP leaders had capitalist sentiments, UNC and UPC were pro-socialist. they thus never combined efforts against the British because of such differences.

Qtn. explain the major obstacles towards the attainment of Uganda's independence.

CONTRIBUTION OF MILTON OBOTE TO THE ATTAINMENT OF UGANDA INDEPENDENCE.

- Milton Obote was born in 1924 at Akokoro village in Apac district in northern Uganda.
- He was the son of the tribal chief of the Lango ethnic group.
- He began his education in 1940 at the Protestant military school in Lira and later attended Gulu Junior Secondary School, Busoga and eventually at Makerere University.
- Having intended to study law, a subject not taught at the university, Obote opted for the general arts course including English and geography.
- At Makerere, Obote honed his natural oratorical skills; he may have been expelled for participating in the students' strike or alternatively left after a place to study law abroad was not funded by the protectorate government.
- He worked in Buganda in southern Uganda before moving to Kenya where he worked as a construction worker at an engineering firm. While in Kenya, Obote involved in the national independence movement.
- Upon returning to Uganda in 1956, he joined the political party, Uganda National Congress (UNC), and was appointed as chairman for UNC of Lango branch.
- In 1957, he was elected to the colonial legislative council representing Lango.
- In 1959, the UNC split into two factions, one faction led by Joseph Kiwanuka and another anti-Buganda wing led by Obote.
- The faction under the leadership of Obote emerged with the Uganda Peoples Union to form the Uganda Peoples Congress.
- Joseph Kiwanuka then took over the leadership of the UNC.
- In 1961, election, Obote's UPC lost the DP led by Ben Kiwanuka therefore became the leader of the Legco and Obote leader of the opposition.
- In the Legco, Obote strongly demanded for an immediate advance towards self-rule.
- On 1st March 1961, Uganda attained self-governance but Buganda was not ready to be part of Uganda.

- In the run to independence, obote formed a coalition with the Buganda royalist party kabaka yekka.
- On 25th april 1962, obote became the prime minister after his upc –ky alliance won with 58 seats in parliament against 24 seats for dp.
- On 9th oct, 1962, Uganda got her independence with obote as its first post independence prime minister.
- The following year, the governor was replaced by ceremonial president to be elected by the parliament.
- In 1963, nuteesa 11 became the ceremonial president with obote as the executive prime minister.

Qtn. explain the role played by dr Milton obote in the attainment of ugandas independence.

NATIONALISM IN KENYA

CONTRIBUTION OF JOMO KENYATTA TO THE ATTAINMENT OF KENYAS INDEPENDENCE

- Jomo kenyata was born in gatundu, the year of his birth is uncertain ,but most scholars agree that he was born in the 1890s.
- He was born in the kikuyu ethnic group.
- He was named kamau wa ngengi at birth, he later adopted the sir name Kenyatta (from the kikuyu word for atype of beared belt he wore) and then the first name jomo.
- Kenyatta was educated by Presbyterian missionaries and in 192, he moved to the city of Nairobi.
- Between 1922-28, Kenyatta worked for the Nairobi municipality as an inspector of water supply.
- While there, he became involved in the African protest movement, joining the kikuyu central association(KCA)in 1924.
- He became the voice of the workers demanding better wages and house facilities.
- In 1928,he became the editor of the movements newspaper and the kikuyu language journal-

MUIGI-THANIA

- Between 1929, and 1931, Kenyatta visited England to represent KCA demands for the return of the African lost to the European settlers and for increased political and economic opportunities for Africans in Kenya.
- In 1931, he returned to England to widen his education and political experience. It was here that he studied anthropology in the London School of Economics.
- In 1938, Kenyatta published his seminal work, Facing Mount Kenya, one of the first reliable books on African anthropology.
- Following World War II, 1939-45, Kenyatta became an outspoken nationalist, demanding Kenyan self government and independence.
- With other African nationalists like Nkrumah of Ghana, Kenyatta helped to organize the fifth Pan African Congress in Britain.
- In Sept 1946, he returned to Kenya and was given an arousing welcome from his own people the Kikuyu.
- In June 1947, Kenyatta became the president of the Kenyan African Union which had been formed two years earlier.
- Under the leadership of Kenyatta, the Kenyan African Union became a national party with wide support from the people.
- Much as the party played its part in demanding a settlement of African grievances, the government did nothing except making of promises.
- This made many Africans to begin thinking that what could not be achieved by peaceful means might be achieved by violence.
- Kenyatta became an active member of the underground or guerilla movement called Mau Mau. With General China, Dedan Kimathi and Tom Mboya provided leadership for this movement.
- During the same period, he became the principal of Githunguri Teacher Training College, but his stay at the college was short lived since he was sacked by the colonial government due to his growing popularity.
- Many members of the KAU were not happy with Kenyatta leaning towards the extremist Mau Mau group.
- Members started demanding for a split between the moderates and the extremist and in 1951, the split became unavoidable.

- Kenyatta stayed with the moderates, and because of the high respect he had earned himself, the fighters too stayed in contact with him.
- In the same year, he presented a memorandum to the colonial secretary Griffith, containing the African demand for self rule.
- In 1953, he was arrested on suspicion that he was the real power behind the mau-mau guerilla activities.
- He was arrested with other leaders of the movements and sentenced to [prison for 7 years.
- By 1959, other leaders of the movement like General China and Kimathi had also been arrested.
- By 1960, the threats of the movement were over but people continued to demand for the release of Kenyatta.
- In 1960, a new political party called Kenya African National Union (KANU) was formed by the African leaders in the Legco.
- Kenyatta was elected as president of this party while still in prison but assumed its leadership after his release in August 1961.
- Some people however, accused KANU of being too town centered, radical and tribal grouping of only the Kikuyu and Luo. They later formed their own party called Kenya African Development Union (KADU).
- As independence drew near, Kenyatta tried to reconcile KANU but his attempts were in vain.
- In Jan 1962, he was elected to the Legco and during the general elections, his KANU party won the elections with an overwhelming majority. However, interim chairman James Gichuru refused to form a government unless Kenyatta was released.
- In Feb 1962, Kenyatta attended the 2nd Lancaster House conference that was called to draw up a constitution for Kenya.
- On May 1963, elections, he steered his KANU party to a resounding victory of 83 seats while their rivals KADU got 41.
- On 1st June 1963, when Kenya attained self rule Kenyatta became the prime minister, he chose his ministers from all the races and always emphasized African unity.
- On 12th Dec 1963, Kenya achieved total independence at the Uhuru Stadium.

Qtn. explain the role played by Jomo Kenyatta in the attainment of Kenya's independence.

NATIONALISM IN TANGANYIKA

CONTRIBUTION OF DR JULIUS NYERERE FOR THE STRUGGLE OF TANZANIA'S INDEPENDENCE.

- Julius Nyerere was born in 1922 at Butiaba near the lake Victoria shores. His father was a village chief.
- He attended a Roman Catholic primary school before joining the government secondary at Tabora and diploma in education at Makerere College in Uganda before finally attaining university education in universities outside Africa including Edinburgh University in Scotland.
- Nyerere taught in several schools in Tanzania between 1945-52.
- This spread literacy which was needed in the struggle for independence.
- He joined TANU (Tanganyika African National Union) in 1955 where he seriously campaigned for Tanganyika's independence.
- He addressed in the UNOS (United Nations Organization) Trusteeship Council in New York, where he expressed Tanganyika's wish for independence.
- He organized TANU to elect the representative to the Legco.
- Nyerere became Tanganyika's 1st prime minister when Tanzania gained her independence.
- He encouraged between Tanganyika and Zanzibar in 1964. This resulted into the establishment of the Republic of Tanzania.
- Emphasized Swahili language to be the common language Tanzanians were to use. This united them in the demanding of their independence.
- Nyerere advocated for peaceful means in the struggle for Tanzania's independence. This scared Tanzania of the destruction that happened to states that used violence to achieve independence.
- Nyerere as a president of Tanganyika African Association transformed (IAA) into TANU (Tanganyika African National Union) 1954.
- Nyerere called for adult voting rights in Tanganyika other than the earlier restriction onto only those who were earning 75 pounds per year to all those who were literate.
- Nyerere assured the Asians, Whites and other foreigners in Tanganyika that they had a future in Tanganyika. This won some foreigners sympathy towards the independence movement.

- Brought TANU close to the UN trusteeship council. It is this that was later to put pressure on Britain to decolonize Tanganyika.
- Nyerere stood down after being elected to the legco complaining of lack of progress of move to Tanganyika's independence.

Qtn. Explain the contribution of Nyerere in the attainment of Tanganyika's independence.

REASONS FOR TANGANYIKA'S EARLY INDEPENDENCE

- The formation of political clubs/associations like Tanganyika Africa Association (TAA), Tanganyika National African Union (TANU).
- The spirit of unity that came as a result of the existence of an all-embracing political party TANU.
- The personality of the colonial governors favoured Tanzania's early independence. Governor Richard Turnbull for example encouraged preparations for Tanzania's independence.
- The United Nations supervised preparation for independence in Tanganyika through its trusteeship council.
- Racial or tribal differences were greatly limited in Tanganyika unlike in both Uganda and Kenya. This gave Tanganyika a united stand in the call for independence.
- Political activities were not much restricted by the authority in Tanganyika as it was in Kenya and Uganda. Party activities for instance would be left free.
- Tanganyika's adoption of Kiswahili as a common language promoted unity in the call for independence.
- The able leadership of men like Julius Nyerere who mobilized all Tanganyikans without discriminating based on race.

Qtn. What factors facilitated the attainment of Tanganyika's independence.

BIOGRAPHY

- **Ingham, K:** A history of East Africa. Longman: 1963.
- **Oliver, R. and G. Mathew:** A history of East Africa. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1963.
- **Kiwanuka:** A history of Buganda 1900. London: 1971.
- **Alpers, Edward:** The East African trade. Nairobi: EAPH.
- **Ogot, B. A. and J. A. Kieran:** A history of East Africa. Nairobi: EAPH and Longman, 1963.

- **Gideon.s.w.and d.a Wilson:** East africa through athousand years .nairobi :1996.
- **Lugard,lord f:** The dual mandate in british tropical africa.london:frank cass,1992.
- **Leeming:**history of east africa.longman:London :2010.
- **Okello,b:** A history of east africa.fountain :kampala:2002.
- **Okoth,A :**Ahistory of africa .vol1:e.a.e.p:Nairobi:2006.

